

One Design One Server One User Experience

> Installing BIRT iServer for Windows

Information in this document is subject to change without notice. Examples provided are fictitious. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form, or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose, in whole or in part, without the express written permission of Actuate Corporation.

© 1995 - 2011 by Actuate Corporation. All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America.

Contains information proprietary to: Actuate Corporation, 2207 Bridgepointe Parkway, San Mateo, CA 94404

www.actuate.com www.birt-exchange.com

The software described in this manual is provided by Actuate Corporation under an Actuate License agreement. The software may be used only in accordance with the terms of the agreement. Actuate software products are protected by U.S. and International patents and patents pending. For a current list of patents, please see http://www.actuate.com/patents.

Actuate Corporation trademarks and registered trademarks include: Actuate, ActuateOne, the Actuate logo, Archived Data Analytics, BIRT, Collaborative Reporting Architecture, e.Analysis, e.Report, e.Reporting, e.Spreadsheet, Encyclopedia, Interactive Viewing, OnPerformance, Performancesoft, Performancesoft Track, Performancesoft Views, Report Encyclopedia, Reportlet, The people behind BIRT, X2BIRT, and XML reports.

Actuate products may contain third-party products or technologies. Third-party trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners, companies, or organizations include:

Adobe Systems Incorporated: Flash Player. Apache Software Foundation (www.apache.org): Axis, Axis2, Batik, Batik SVG library, Commons Command Line Interface (CLI), Commons Codec, Derby, Shindig, Struts, Tomcat, Xerces, Xerces2 Java Parser, and Xerces-C++ XML Parser. Bits Per Second, Ltd. and Graphics Server Technologies, L.P.: Graphics Server. Bruno Lowagie and Paulo Soares: iText, licensed under the Mozilla Public License (MPL). Castor (www.castor.org), ExoLab Project (www.exolab.org), and Intalio, Inc. (www.intalio.org): Castor. Codejock Software: Xtreme Toolkit Pro. DataDirect Technologies Corporation: DataDirect JDBC, DataDirect ÓDBC. Eclipse Foundation, Inc. (www.eclipse.org): Babel, Data Tools Platform (DTP) ODA, Eclipse SDK, Graphics Editor Framework (GEF), Eclipse Modeling Framework (EMF), and Eclipse Web Tools Platform (WTP), licensed under the Eclipse Public License (EPL). Jason Hsueth and Kenton Varda (code.google.com): Protocole Buffer. ImageMagick Studio LLC.: ÌmageMagick. InfoSoft Global (P) Ltd.: ÈusionCharts, FusionMaps, FusionWidgets, PowerCharts. Mark Adler and Jean-loup Gailly (www.zlib.net): zLib. Matt Ingenthron, Eric D. Lambert, and Dustin Sallings (code.google.com): Spymemcached, licensed under the MIT OSI License. International Components for Unicode (ICU): ICU library. KL Group, Inc.: XRT Graph, licensed under XRT for Motif Binary License Agreement. LEAD Technologies, Inc.: LEADTOOLS. Microsoft Corporation (Microsoft Developer Network): CompoundDocument Library. Mozilla: Mozilla XML Parser, licensed under the Mozilla Public License (MPL). MySQL Americas, Inc.: MySQL Connector. Netscape Communications Corporation, Inc.: Rhino, licensed under the Netscape Public License (NPL). Oracle Corporation: Berkeley DB. PostgreSQL Global Development Group: pgAdmin, PostgreSQL, PostgreSQL JDBC driver. Rogue Wave Software, Inc.: Rogue Wave Library SourcePro Core, tools.h++. Sam Stephenson (prototype.conio.net): prototype.js, licensed under the MIT license. Sencha Inc.: Ext JS. Sun Microsystems, Inc.: JAXB, JDK, Jstl. ThimbleWare, Inc.: JMemcached, licensed under the Apache Public License (APL). World Wide Web Consortium (W3C)(MIT, ERCIM, Keio): Flute, JTidy, Simple API for CSS. XFree86 Project, Inc.: (www.xfree86.org): xvfb. Yuri Kanivets (code.google.com): Android Wheel gadget, licensed under the Apache Public License (APL). ZXing authors (code.google.com): ZXing, licensed under the Apache Public License (APL).

All other brand or product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners, companies, or organizations.

Document No. 111021-2-430342 August 2, 2011

## Contents

Introduction
Understanding ActuateOne vii
About the BIRT iServer documentation vii
Obtaining documentation x
Using PDF documentationxi
Obtaining late-breaking information and documentation updatesxi
About obtaining technical supportxi
About supported and obsolete products xii
Typographical conventions xii
Syntax conventions xii
About Installing BIRT iServer for Windowsxiii

### Part 1 Architecture

#### Chapter 1

Understanding Actuate BIRT iServer architecture	
Understanding BIRT iServer architecture	2
Using a third-party RDBMS with an Encyclopedia volume	2
Customizing Encyclopedia volume databases 5	į
Installing and configuring iServer System	,
Managing the backup, recovery, and failover capabilities of the Encyclopedia volume data-	
base and data files	ć
Managing an iServer cluster	
Understanding the iServer System process model 8	
Understanding process flow in a stand-alone iServer	1
Understanding process flow in an iServer cluster 13	,
Administering iServer System 15	
About Migration and Administration Tools 16	I
Using JDBC to connect to an Encyclopedia volume database	
API Compatibility	
About international character sets 19	
Administrative reports	
Supported operating systems 19	

### Part 2 Installing

### Chapter 2

Installing BIRT iServer	23
Preparing to install BIRT iServer	
Creating an account with Windows administrator privileges	24
Configuring the iServer user account	25
Configuring log on as a service privilege	
Backing up iServer system and Encyclopedia volume metadata	
Performing a new installation	
Installing a new instance of BIRT iServer Release 11	27
Accessing the PostgreSQL Database Server using the pgAdmin utility	41
Understanding the iServer installation environment	
About migrating an earlier iServer release to Actuate 11	
About running different releases on the same machine	45
About performance and disk space issues	46
About upgrading an iServer with resource groups	
About the Java Software Development Kit	46
Accessing JAR files for report generation	
Gathering LDAP information	
Following Best Practices	
Using a test environment	
Setting up a production staging area	
Setting up a production environment	
Chapter 3	

### Installing BIRT iServer using an alternative

database
Preparing to install BIRT iServer using an alternative database
Creating an account with Windows administrator privileges
Creating the iServer system and Encyclopedia volume schemas and iserver user in an alterna-
tive database
Creating the system and Encyclopedia volume schemas and iserver user in a pre-existing
PostgreSQL database
Creating the system and Encyclopedia volume schemas and iserver user in a pre-existing
Oracle database
Creating the system and Encyclopedia volume schemas and iserver user in a pre-existing
SQL Server database
Creating the system and Encyclopedia volume schemas and iserver user in a pre-existing
DB2 database
Backing up iServer system and Encyclopedia volume metadata62
Installing an Encyclopedia volume that uses an alternative database

### Chapter 4

Upgrading BIRT iServer	7
Preparing to upgrade BIRT iServer	78
Creating an account with Windows administrator privileges	78
Backing up iServer system and Encyclopedia volume metadata	79
Performing an automatic in-place upgrade	80
About the acserverconfig.xml files saved by the upgrade process	97
Accessing the PostgreSQL Database Server using the pgAdmin utility	98
Performing an in-place upgrade from an earlier version of iServer Release 11	99
Performing a manual side-by-side upgrade1	13
Performing a manual side-by-side migration 13	33
Specifying Squirrel Data Exporter properties 14	42
Specifying Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator properties 14	44
Specifying System Data Store Administrator properties 1	50
Performing operations using System Data Store Administrator utility 1	52
Creating and Populating a System Schema 1	52
Performing operations using Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator utility 1	53
Importing One or More Volumes into a New Schema 1	53
Importing One or More Volumes into a Populated Schema	54
Exporting All Volumes from a Schema 1	54
Exporting A Single Volume from a Schema 1	54
Deleting All Volumes from a Schema 1	55
Deleting a Single Volume from a Schema 1	55
Creating a New Volume in an Empty Schema 1	56
Creating a New Volume in a Populated Schema 1	56
Creating and Initializing a New Volume in a New Schema	57
Configuring Squirrel Data Exporter and System or Encyclopedia Data Store Administrate properties files	or 57

### Chapter 5

instannig a	
BIRT iServer cluster	59
Installing a BIRT iServer cluster node 1	160
Creating an account with Windows administrator privileges 1	161
Performing a cluster node installation using the wizard 1	162
Adding a node to a cluster 1	175
Chapter 6	

Installing BIRT iServer in a cloud	183
Understanding a BIRT iServer cloud deployment	184
Preparing to deploy BIRT iServer in a cloud environment	184
Deploying an iServer distribution package	186

Specifying AC_SERVER_HOME	
Specifying AC_DATA_HOME	

### Chapter 7

Installing Information Console	193
Preparing to install Information Console	194
About installing from an FTP download	194
About performing a full installation	194
Installing Information Console on Windows	194
Using the installation wizard	195
Using the WAR file to install	201
General deployment tasks	201
Preparing the server	202
Preparing the WAR file	202
About clusters of servers	204
Avoiding cache conflicts after installing	204
Testing the installation	205

## Chapter 8 Installing iServer Integration Technology

and Documentation	. 207
Installing iServer Integration Technology	208
Installing the localization and documentation files	212
About accessing online help	215
Searching PDF manuals using master-index.pdx	

### Part 3 Licensing

21
22
22
25
26
26
26
27
28
29
30
30

Binding to multiple-core CPUs	232
Binding an Actuate process to a processor	232
About processors and hyperthreading	233
Checking BIRT iServer bound processors	234
Determining the number of processors an iServer System uses	234
Understanding CPU binding validation while iServer is running	235
Understanding CPU binding validation when an Encyclopedia volume comes online	235
Understanding CPU binding validation when running iServer processes	235
Configuring e-mail for CPU license problems	236

### Part 4 Backing Up

Chapter 10

Backing up an Encyclopedia volume
Performing an Encyclopedia volume backup 240
Managing the backup and recovery of Encyclopedia volume metadata and data files 240
Using RDBMS and file system backup utilities
Avoiding conflict with the file purging process
Backing up and restoring an Encyclopedia volume that uses a PostgreSQL database 243
Backing up an Encyclopedia volume using pgAdmin
Backing up an Encyclopedia volume using pg_dump 249
Restoring an Encyclopedia volume using pgAdmin
Restoring an Encyclopedia volume using pg_restore 259
Backing up and restoring an Encyclopedia volume that uses an Oracle database
Backing up an Encyclopedia volume using Oracle Data Pump Export (expdp) 261
Restoring an Encyclopedia volume using Oracle Data Pump Import (impdp) 263
Backing up and restoring an Encyclopedia volume that uses a SQL Server database 265
Backing up and restoring an Encyclopedia volume
Backing up an Encyclopedia volume using SQL Server Management Studio 266
Restoring an Encyclopedia volume using SQL Server Management Studio 274
Backing up and restoring an Encyclopedia volume that uses a DB2 database
Backing up an Encyclopedia volume using DB2 Control Center
Restoring an Encyclopedia volume using DB2 Control Center
Index

### Understanding ActuateOne

ActuateOne<sup>TM</sup> includes Release 11 of Actuate<sup>®</sup> Corporation's value-added products for the Eclipse BIRT open source project. ActuateOne institutes a paradigm shift in Business Intelligence technology from individualized tools to a suite of integrated capabilities within a single environment. ActuateOne is one designer, one server, one integrated environment providing a single unified user experience. A common architecture is precisely what today's information-rich global environment requires for development and deployment. This unified Actuate technology continues to enable information management and delivery while supporting advanced security, massive scalability, flexibility through programming, and reuse. ActuateOne realizes our corporate vision of a single user experience by providing extended new analytics capabilities reaching a broader spectrum of users. The new dashboard functionality supports building gadgets to enhance the visual presentation of information. Export to Excel® and other formats integrates Actuate output with other tools on the end-user desktop. Actuate's cloud-ready server supports elastic clustering for dynamic provision of uninterrupted efficient service.

Information, live demos, and endorsements about this release are available from birt-exchange.com and actuate.com. The Actuate site also makes "The Forrester Wave<sup>TM</sup>: Open Source Business Intelligence (BI), Q3 2010" report freely available. The report recognizes Actuate and its value-added offerings for BIRT as a leader in Open Source Business Intelligence.

### About the BIRT iServer documentation

The printed and online documentation includes the materials described in Table I-1. You can obtain HTML and PDF files from the BIRT Exchange or Actuate Customer Support site.

Documentation updates are created in response to customer requirements and are available at both sites.

For information about this topic	See the following resource
Installing BIRT iServer for Linux and UNIX	Installing BIRT iServer for Linux and UNIX
Installing BIRT iServer for Windows	Installing BIRT iServer for Windows
Late-breaking information and documentation updates	Release notes and updated localization, HTML help, and PDF files posted on birt-exchange.com and Actuate Support
<ul> <li>Configuring BIRT iServer</li> <li>Use Configuration Console to:</li> <li>Add additional Encyclopedia volumes</li> <li>Configure clusters of iServers</li> <li>Tune iServer services and processes</li> <li>Configure e-mail notification</li> <li>Review and update license options</li> <li>Open ports for iServer use</li> <li>Manage iServer printers and</li> </ul>	Configuring BIRT iServer

 Table I-1
 BIRT iServer documentation

Configure diagnostic logging

resources

For information about this topic	See the following resource
Managing an Encyclopedia Volume Use Management Console to:	
<ul> <li>Set up user accounts</li> </ul>	Managing an
<ul> <li>Set up disci accounts</li> <li>Set up channels and notification groups</li> </ul>	Encyclopedia Volume
<ul> <li>Assign security roles</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Manage files and folders</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Schedule, run, and manage reports</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Back up the Encyclopedia volume</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Use Actuate Open Security</li> </ul>	
Information Console Developer Guide	
<ul> <li>Overview of Information Console concepts and web applications</li> </ul>	Information Console Developer
<ul> <li>Using, customizing, and configuring the Deployment Kit</li> </ul>	5 Guide
<ul> <li>Using code components for JSPs, URL parameters, JavaScript files, Java servlets, Java Beans, and security facilities</li> </ul>	L
Using BIRT iServer Integration Technology	
<ul> <li>Overview of Actuate web services and SOAP messaging</li> </ul>	Using BIRT iServer Integration
<ul> <li>Managing an Encyclopedia volume</li> </ul>	Technology
<ul> <li>Developing API applications using Java or .NET</li> </ul>	L
<ul> <li>Using Java Report Server Security Extension (RSSE) APIs</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Using logging, performance monitoring, and archiving features</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Customizing the Actuate software installation process</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Actuate Information Delivery API operations and data types reference</li> </ul>	
	(

Introduction ix





### **Obtaining documentation**

Actuate provides technical documentation in PDF, HTML, and print formats. You can download PDF or view HTML versions of the documentation from

birt-exchange.com. If you purchase the product, you can also download documentation using ftp as instructed in the e-mail from Actuate Distribution.

If you request a physical package, install the files using the Online Documentation and Localization Resource Files DVD, which ships as part of your Actuate software package. If you select the typical setup when you install from the DVD, the installation creates the Program Files\Actuate11\Manuals directory.

### **Using PDF documentation**

In each PDF version of a book, the table of contents and the index page numbers contain links to the corresponding topics in the text. In the table of contents, you access the link by positioning the pointer over the topic. In the index, you access the link by positioning the pointer over the page number.

The Program Files\Actuate11\Manuals directory contains a file, masterindex.pdx, which is an Adobe Acrobat Catalog utility that can search all the documents in the Actuate Manuals directory. This tool provides a convenient way to find information on a particular topic in Actuate documentation.

## Obtaining late-breaking information and documentation updates

The release notes contain late-breaking news about Actuate products and features. The release notes are available on the Actuate Support site at the following URL:

http://support.actuate.com/documentation/releasenotes

Updates to documentation in PDF form are available at the following URL:

http://support.actuate.com/documentation

If you are a new user, you must first register on the site and log in to view the release notes. Birt-exchange.com and actuate.com also provide product update information.

### About obtaining technical support

You can contact Customer Support by e-mail or telephone. For contact information, go to the following URL:

http://www.actuate.com/services/support/contact-support.asp

### About supported and obsolete products

The Actuate Support Lifecycle Policy and Supported Products Matrix are available on the Actuate Support web site at the following URL:

http://support.actuate.com/documentation/spm

### **Typographical conventions**

Table I-2 describes the typographical conventions in this document.

<b>7 1 1</b>		
Item	Convention	Example
Code examples	Monospace	Dim Text1 As String
File names	Initial capital letter, except where file names are case-sensitive	Detail.roi
Key combination	A + sign between keys means to press both keys at the same time	Ctrl+Shift
Menu items	Capitalized, no bold	File
Submenu items	Separated from the main menu item with a small arrow	File≁New
User input or user response	Monospace	M*16*
User input in XML and Java code	Monospace italics	chkjava.exe <i>cab_nam</i> e.cab

**Table I-2**Typographical conventions

### Syntax conventions

Table I-3 describes the symbols used to present syntax.

Table I-3	Syntax conventions		
Symbol	Description	Example	
[]	Optional item	[Alias <alias name="">]</alias>	
	Array subscript	matrix[]	

Table I-3	<b>Syntax conventions</b>		
Symbol	Description	Example	
{}	Groups two or more mutually exclusive options or arguments when used with a pipe	{While   Until}	
	Defines array contents	{0, 1, 2, 3}	
	Delimiter of code block	<pre>public ACJDesigner(){ }</pre>	
	Separates mutually exclusive options or arguments in a group	Exit {Do   For   Function   Sub}	
	Java OR operator	int length   4	
<>	Argument you must supply	<expression format="" to=""></expression>	
	Delimiter in XML	<xsd:sequence></xsd:sequence>	

### About Installing BIRT iServer for Windows

Cuntax conventions

Table I 9

Installing BIRT iServer for Windows includes the following chapters:

- Introduction. Provides an overview of this guide, BIRT iServer documentation, and the typographical conventions in this book.
- *Part 1. Architecture.* Describes BIRT iServer architecture.
- Chapter 1. Understanding Actuate BIRT iServer architecture. Describes BIRT iServer architecture, the iServer System process model, and system administration, including new utilities and third-party relational database management systems (RDBMS) used to store iServer system and Encyclopedia volume metadata.
- Part 2. Installing. Describes how to install BIRT iServer.
- *Chapter 2. Installing BIRT iServer.* Describes how to install BIRT iServer using the out-of-the-box (OOTB) PostgreSQL relational database management system (RDBMS) in a Windows environment.
- Chapter 3. Installing BIRT iServer using an alternative database. Describes how to install BIRT iServer using an alternative RDBMS, such as a pre-existing PostgreSQL or Oracle RDBMS, in a Windows environment.
- *Chapter 4. Upgrading BIRT iServer.* Describes how to upgrade BIRT iServer in a Windows environment.

- *Chapter 5. Installing a BIRT iServer cluster.* Describes how to install an BIRT iServer cluster node in a Windows environment.
- *Chapter 6. Installing BIRT iServer in a cloud.* Describes how to install BIRT iServer in a cloud environment using a ready-to-launch iServer image.
- *Chapter 7. Installing Information Console.* Describes how to install Actuate Information Console in Windows.
- Chapter 8. Installing iServer Integration Technology and Documentation. Describes how to install Actuate iServer Integration Technology and Documentation in a Windows environment.
- *Part 3. Licensing.* Describes how to license BIRT iServer.
- *Chapter 9. Licensing BIRT iServer.* Describes licensing options, license key installation, and CPU-binding policies for BIRT iServer.
- *Part 4. Backing Up.* Describes how to back up a BIRT iServer.
- *Chapter 10. Backing up an Encyclopedia volume.* Describes how to back up and restore BIRT iServer Encyclopedia volume metadata and data.

# Part One

Architecture

## Understanding Actuate BIRT iServer architecture

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Understanding BIRT iServer architecture
- Understanding the iServer System process model
- Administering iServer System

### **Understanding BIRT iServer architecture**

Before Release 11, Actuate BIRT iServer used a proprietary relational database management system (RDBMS), known internally as the Squirrel database, to store the metadata related to iServer System and Encyclopedia volume configuration. In Release 11, Actuate replaced this out-of-the-box (OOTB) database with a customized version of the open-source, third-party database, PostgreSQL.

Actuate also adapted iServer to support alternative, customizable, third-party database installations. In Release 11 Service Pack 3, Actuate currently supports DB2, Microsoft SQL Server, Oracle, or a pre-existing PostgreSQL instance.

In these third-party RDBMS, iServer stores metadata in the following schemas:

System

Contains settings related to iServer configuration, such as servers, templates, volumes, and partitions

Encyclopedia volume

Contains settings related to volume configuration, such as users, roles, groups, channels, folders, files, and other objects.

In Release 11, Actuate provides the following installation options:

- Install a new iServer with a PostgreSQL or other supported, alternative, thirdparty database
- Upgrade the Actuate proprietary database installation from a previous major release, such as Release 10 Service Pack 1, to a Release 11 version
- Upgrade an earlier Release 11 version to a newer Release 11 service pack, such an upgrade from Release 11 Service Pack 2 to Service Pack 3
- Maintain a mix of Actuate PostgreSQL and third-party database implementations side-by-side in an iServer System installation

## Using a third-party RDBMS with an Encyclopedia volume

Actuate automatically installs the iServer system and Encyclopedia volume schemas in the OOTB PostgreSQL RDBMS installation. Installation of these schemas in a pre-existing PostgreSQL RDBMS or alternative RDBMS, such as DB2, Oracle, or SQL Server, requires manually running a SQL script containing the appropriate Data Definition Language (DDL) statements. The Installing section of this book contains chapters that provide detailed, step-by-step descriptions on how to perform these operations. Actuate provides the iServer administrator with the ability to install the metadata for Encyclopedia volumes in databases in the same schema, separate schemas, or separate databases. By default, Actuate uses separate schemas for each Encyclopedia volume database, but provides the administrator with the option to specify whether to have volume databases share a schema. Actuate recommends using a separate schema for each Encyclopedia volume database for ease of administration.

In a PostgreSQL installation, the database administrator can manage an Encyclopedia volume either as an individual PostgreSQL database or as a schema in a PostgreSQL database. The same instance of a PostgreSQL server can manage multiple Encyclopedia volumes that use a mix of these configuration options. In PostgreSQL technical jargon, multiple databases managed by the same instance of the PostgreSQL server are in a PostgreSQL database cluster.

In Oracle, there is a one-to-one relationship between a database user and a schema. A schema is not a separate entity. An Actuate DB2, PostgreSQL, or SQL Server installation also requires this one-to-one relationship between a database user and a schema for consistency.

In a typical pre-existing RDBMS installation, the database administrator first creates a schema owner and a database user by running a SQL script. During iServer installation, the iServer system administrator provides the schema owner and database user credentials. The iServer installation program connects to the RDBMS, creates the necessary Encyclopedia volume database structures, then loads the metadata. The iServer application interacts with the third-party RDBMS using these database user credentials.

Only the metadata that specifies the Encyclopedia volume configuration are in the database. Designs, documents, information objects, and other iServer data objects are stored in the file system.

#### **Customizing Encyclopedia volume databases**

Actuate supports read-only operations on the system and Encyclopedia volume metadata in the tables of the OOTB or other third-party database. Actuate does not support the addition, deletion, or modification of these metadata tables.

Actuate does permit the creation of additional indexes on these tables. For example, a customer can create an index on the job completion notices table to expedite database processing.

Actuate does not recommend any customization of the system metadata database. Any customization that the customer does on the Encyclopedia volume database must be redone when migrating, reinstalling, or upgrading iServer. Actuate iServer does not track the objects that a customer creates. Actuate reserves the right to change the structure of the schema in future releases.

### Installing and configuring iServer System

The installation, configuration, and administration of an iServer System can include the following tasks:

- Install a new iServer using one of the following options:
  - Automated installation

Run the installation program to configure iServer and the OOTB PostgreSQL database or an alternative, supported RDBMS.

Cloud deployment

Deploy a prepared image of an installed iServer run-time environment. The administrator can create a customized image by generating an archive of an installed iServer run-time environment. Alternatively, an out-of-thebox (OOTB) image is available as a separate iServer distribution package for Windows. The administrator deploys the image by unbundling the archive or installing a virtual image on the target machine.

 Upgrade an earlier iServer installation to Release 11 using the installation program to overwrite automatically the earlier installation.

Upgrades an earlier iServer system in place, such as Release 10 Service Pack 1, automatically migrating one or more Encyclopedia volumes.

 Upgrade an earlier iServer installation to Release 11 using the installation program to install iServer, then manually migrate Encyclopedia volume metadata and data from an earlier to the new installation.

Upgrades an earlier iServer system in place, such as Release 10 Service Pack 1, without migrating any Encyclopedia volumes. During installation, the administrator chooses to migrate the volumes manually.

After installation, the administrator uses the Squirrel Data Exporter and Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator utilities to migrate the existing iServer installation to either an in-place or a new, side-by-side instance of iServer Release 11 when upgrading from an earlier major release. When upgrading a Release 11 installation to a new Release 11 service pack, the administrator uses the Encyclopedia Data Store Upgrader utility. These utilities are Java programs run from the command line.

For more information on installing and upgrading an iServer using the automated installation programs and utilities or installing iServer in a cloud deployment, see the Installing section later in this book. For more information on changes to iServer utilities in Release 11, see "About Migration and Administration Tools," later in this chapter.

## Managing the backup, recovery, and failover capabilities of the Encyclopedia volume database and data files

The iServer administrator uses third-party RDBMS tools to manage the backup, recovery, and failover capabilities of the Encyclopedia volume database. The iServer administrator uses standard operating system or other third-party tools to manage the backup and recovery of the data files.

Since iServer Release 11 no longer uses the internal proprietary Squirrel database to store Encyclopedia volume metadata, the automatic backup, recovery, and failover features available in earlier iServer releases are now obsolete. For information on the recommended procedures to back up an iServer system and Encyclopedia volume schemas in the Release 11 environment, see Chapter 10, "Backing up an Encyclopedia volume," later in this book.

Consult the third-party RDBMS documentation for detailed information on how to use native system tools to configure backup, recovery, and failover operations for an externally managed Encyclopedia volume database.

Documentation for a PostgreSQL RDBMS is available at:

http://www.postgresql.org/docs/8.4/static/release-8-4.html

Documentation for an Oracle RDBMS is available at:

Documentation for Microsoft SQL Server RDBMS is available at:

http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/sqlserver/bb671149

Documentation for IBMDB2 RDBMS is available at:

https://www-304.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg27009474

The third-party database schemas that contain iServer system and Encyclopedia volume metadata are critical components of BIRT iServer System. To guard against data loss, the database administrator must back up the Encyclopedia volume schemas and all related file data to ensure the recoverability in the event of failure. For more information on backing an iServer installation, see Chapter 10, "Backing up an Encyclopedia volume," later in this book.

In Release 11, it is not necessary to back up the iServer system schema, although future versions may require this operation to protect critical system metadata. The administrator can restore a corrupted or missing system schema using the System Data Store Administrator utility. For more information on this utility, see "Specifying System Data Store Administrator properties," in Chapter 4, "Upgrading BIRT iServer," later in this book.

An Actuate system administrator must take all necessary precautions to ensure that a database is properly backed up and available to safeguard Encyclopedia

http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/database/enterprise-edition/ documentation/index.html

volume metadata. Please consult Actuate Support at the time of installation if you have any questions about the backup, recovery, or failover procedures necessary to protect against the possibility of catastrophic failure.

### Managing an iServer cluster

In Actuate Release 11 and later, the concept of a master node no longer exists. Any node in a cluster has the ability to modify the shared server configuration file. The node performing these operations typically depends on which node the system administrator uses when connecting to iServer System through an administration console.

In Release 11 and earlier, iServer used multicasting to broadcast event information and synchronize operations in a cluster. Some cloud computing environments do not support multicasting. Starting in Release 11 Service Pack 1, iServer uses the third-party RDBMS as a shared repository for storing cluster information. This enhancement replaces multicasting as a way of managing cluster information.

In Actuate Release 11 and later, there is no concept of volume failover, since each node in a cluster can operate on all the volumes. Configuring system and Encyclopedia volume database failover is the responsibility of the third-party RDBMS administrator. The database administrator must use the facilities available in the RDBMS to configure failover capability.

### Understanding the iServer System process model

In Release 11, the Actuate BIRT iServer System platform uses a multi-threaded, multi-process model, running single instances of the following components on each iServer node:

Encyclopedia volume

Stores metadata in an OOTB (PostgreSQL) or alternative RDBMS and coordinates processing for designs, documents, information objects, and other iServer data objects stored in the file system.

Process Management Daemon (PMD)

Distributes service requests among available iServer services and nodes.

iServer servlet container

Provides the run-time environment for client applications, such as Actuate Information, Management, and Configuration Consoles. Client applications communicate with iServer System using SOAP-based messaging.

In addition, the iServer platform supports multiple instances of the following services on each iServer node:

Factory

Executes requests to generate queries and documents and perform server-side printing.

View

Supports viewing documents in DHTML and other output formats, such as Excel and PDF. Handles requests to download files from an Encyclopedia volume.

Integration

Coordinates the running of information object (IOB) files that extract data from multiple data sources.

Caching

Controls the Actuate Caching process that manages an information object cache and enables caching of data retrieved from data sources.

This loosely-coupled iServer architecture model provides the following maintenance and performance benefits:

- Startup and shutdown of an iServer is fast because it is independent of the RDBMS that manages the Encyclopedia volume. The database server can remain online when shutting down an iServer and is available when the iServer starts up.
- Controlling the sequence of an Encyclopedia volume startup is not necessary. All volumes are either already online in the database server or come online as the database server starts.
- Downtime to apply a patch or diagnostic fix for an iServer is reduced. The RDBMS does not have to be shutdown.

### Understanding process flow in a stand-alone iServer

Figure 1-1 illustrates the iServer RDBMS process architecture for a stand-alone, two-volume, out-of-the-box (OOTB) PostgreSQL database configuration. In this configuration, the iServer administrator starts and stops an iServer instance by running scripts from the command line or using the graphical user interface (GUI) available in Configuration Console.

The PostgreSQL RDBMS runs as a service in Windows or a process in Linux or UNIX. The RDBMS can be configured to start automatically or run manually, using a script similar to the iServer startup script.

Client applications, such as Actuate Information, Management, and Configuration Consoles, run in a servlet container. These applications communicate with iServer using the Actuate Information Delivery API or IDAPI.



### Figure 1-1 iServer RDBMS process architecture for a stand-alone, two-volume, OOTB database

An IDAPI application uses a SOAP processor that serializes, or transforms, a remote procedure call by the application into an XML-based SOAP request to iServer to perform a web service. The application sends the message across the network using the Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) transport layer.

The Process Management Daemon (PMD) is a message distribution service that routes the request to iServer. iServer receives the request and deserializes the SOAP message. iServer performs the appropriate action and sends a response in the form of a SOAP message back to the application.

For example, iServer receives a request to run a design, such as a BIRT design, immediately or as a scheduled job. iServer communicates with the internal iServer framework and Encyclopedia volume metadata databases as necessary to locate the design and identify the resources required to run the design in the system.

The reporting engine selects a Java Factory service to run the BIRT design and checks job status. iServer uses an asynchronous Java Factory service to generate a temporary document or a synchronous Java Factory service to generate a scheduled document.

The View service renders the document in DHTML format, or converts the output to other supported formats, such as Excel and PDF, and handles requests to download files from the Encyclopedia volume. The View service sends the document to the requesting application for viewing.

A design that uses an information object utilizes the Integration and Caching services to perform the following processing:

- Run a query and extract data from an external data source
- Cache data in iServer System for high availability and to reduce load on the network, data source, and Encyclopedia volume by avoiding repetitive data retrieval operations

iServer stores system and Encyclopedia volume metadata in the third-party RDBMS, communicating with the RDBMS as necessary using JDBC. iServer uses the physical file system to read and store designs, documents, information objects, and other iServer objects as data in Encyclopedia volume partitions.

The out-of-the-box (OOTB) iServer PostgreSQL installation configures the Encyclopedia volume database on the local disk to increase the reliability and performance of file input and output (I/O) operations. PostgreSQL discourages creating databases accessed using a Network File Systems (NFS) for these reasons. For more information, see section 17.2.1 Network File Systems at the following URL:

http://www.postgresql.org/docs/8.3/static/creating-cluster.html



Figure 1-2 iServer RDBMS process architecture for a clustered, two-node, two-volume, OOTB database

The iServer OOTB PostgreSQL database server starts multiple instances to handle connections for running queries and accessing data. In database jargon, PostgreSQL uses a process-per-user, client/server model. For more information, refer to the PostgreSQL documentation at the following URL:

http://www.postgresql.org/docs/8.4/static/connect-estab.html

### Understanding process flow in an iServer cluster

Figure 1-2 illustrates the iServer RDBMS process architecture for a clustered, two-node, two-volume, OOTB database configuration. A node is a machine running an iServer instance.

An iServer administrator adds a node to a cluster to scale iServer System to the necessary processing requirements. There are two methods of adding a new node to the cluster:

- Perform an automated, custom installation, using the wizard-driven installation program
- Perform a manual installation or cloud deployment, using a prepared image of an installed iServer run-time environment

Every cluster node must have network access to the following directory and resources to join the cluster:

- The shared configuration home directory
- Cluster resources, such as printers, database systems, and disk storage systems

Each node gets its configuration from a template in acserverconfig.xml, which is located in a shared configuration home directory along with the license file, acserverlicense.xml.

The acserverconfig.xml file contains the server templates as well as other configuration parameters specifying the host names, volume names, port numbers, printers, and services used by nodes in the cluster. When the Process Management Daemon (PMD) starts up, it reads these configurations and exposes them to the process environment variable list. When a node joins a cluster, it configures itself using its template.

After deployment and configuring the appropriate environment variables in acpmdconfig.xml, the administrator launches a deployed iServer image from the command line by passing the necessary arguments or creates a script that executes the commands. Nodes with the same cluster ID, running on the same sub-net, automatically detect and join each other to form the cluster. This feature is known as elastic iServer clustering.

The cluster automatically detects the on-off status of any node. Single-point node failure does not affect the availability of other nodes.

In the two-node cluster example, shown in Figure 1-2, client applications, such as Actuate Information, Management, and Configuration Consoles, run in a servlet container. These applications support distributing requests to multiple machines. The cluster communicates across the network using standard HTTP/IP addressing.

One or more nodes in the cluster manage the request message routing. The Process Management Daemons (PMDs) located on each node coordinate processing among available iServer services based on message type to balance load across the nodes.

This loosely-coupled model provides the following improvements to intra-cluster messaging:

- Each iServer node in the cluster is relatively independent and identical in terms of components and functionality. Intra-cluster messages are limited to messages for cluster membership and load balancing.
- Operations like design execution and viewing typically require intermediate information from the Encyclopedia volume metadata database. This information is now directly retrieved from or updated in the RBDMS, eliminating internal messages to Encyclopedia services on other nodes.

This increased scalability of operations at the iServer level can create bottlenecks at the RDBMS level. Important factors to consider when configuring nodes and ancillary resources include estimating processing power and access to hardware and software resources, such as printers and database drivers.

iServer instances running on multiple machines maintain iServer system and Encyclopedia volume metadata in databases and control access to shared volume data. The volume data can be on machines that are not running iServer, but must be shared and accessible to each iServer instance.

This loosely-coupled cluster model provides the following maintenance and performance benefits:

- Startup and shutdown of an iServer is fast because it is independent of the RDBMS that manages the Encyclopedia volume. An RDBMS can remain online when shutting down an iServer and the RDBMS is available when the iServer starts up.
- Controlling the sequence of Encyclopedia volume startup is not necessary. All
  volumes are either already online in the RDBMS or come online as the RDBMS
  starts.
- Downtime to apply a patch fix patch or a diagnostic fix for an iServer is reduced. The RDBMS, including the OOTB PostgreSQL database server, does not have to be shutdown. In an iServer cluster, the patch or diagnostic fix can be applied to one iServer node at a time.

This operational model lends itself well to grid, cloud, and other data-center types of deployments.

For more information about the cloud computing deployment option, see Chapter 6, "Installing BIRT iServer in a cloud," later in this book. For more information about the cluster installation option, see Chapter 9, "Clustering," in *Configuring BIRT iServer*.

### Administering iServer System

Administering an iServer System includes the following tasks:

 Setting up users, roles, groups, channels, folders, files, and other administrative tasks

An administrator creates, configures, and manages users, roles, groups, files, folders, and channels, including assigning and updating privileges, managing security role and group memberships, and providing access to channels. User, role, group, and channel privileges selectively control access to the Encyclopedia volume and its data objects.

Scheduling jobs to run designs and generate documents

Each stand-alone iServer and node in an iServer cluster has a job scheduler and dispatcher. A job dispatcher send jobs to the local resource group factories.

In this loosely-coupled cluster model, the dispatcher sends a job from the pending queue to available factories, balancing the load across the cluster. Multiple job schedulers running on the nodes in a cluster allow iServer System to scale processing to handle thousands of scheduled jobs at the same time.

Reviewing logs and auditing the information to diagnose system problems

iServer can capture usage and error information in log files to assist an administrator in evaluating resource usage and troubleshoot problems. The usage and error logging applications are open framework applications, which are available as DLLs in Windows and shared libraries in Linux or UNIX.

Configuring a cluster using automated installation programs and cloud computing base images

The administrator can run the installation program to configure iServer or deploy a prepared image of an installed iServer run-time environment. Each cluster node gets its configuration from a template in acserverconfig.xml, located in a shared configuration home directory. Nodes with the same cluster ID, running on the same sub-net, automatically detect and join each other to form the cluster.

 Using Actuate Server Integration Technologies scripts and tools to develop client applications and extend iServer functionality The Actuate Information Delivery application programming interface (IDAPI) supports integrating and administering iServer using extensible markup language (XML) and the simple object access protocol (SOAP). Using the IDAPI, developers can create applications that perform such tasks as scheduling a custom event, running an Report Server Security Extension (RSSE) application to manage users and roles in an external system such as an LDAP server, and installing and customizing usage and error logging and performance monitoring extensions.

A BIRT iServer administrator uses the Actuate Information, Management, and Configuration Consoles, command-line utilities, and Server Integration Technology components to perform these tasks.

Please consult the following Actuate iServer Release 11 documentation for more information on how to administer an iServer System using these components:

Installing BIRT iServer for Windows or Installing BIRT iServer for Linux and UNIX

Describes iServer System architecture. Provides detailed instructions on how to use automated installation programs and command-line utilities to install stand-alone iServer and clustered nodes that store Encyclopedia volume metadata in an external, third-party RDBMS, such as DB2, Oracle, PostgreSQL, or SQL Server. Also describes Actuate licensing policies and procedures and backup and recovery operations.

• Managing an Encyclopedia Volume

Describes how to use Management Console and command-line options to perform tasks such as managing Encyclopedia volume user accounts, assigning privileges, scheduling jobs, and distributing documents.

Configuring BIRT iServer

Describes how to use Configuration Console to perform tasks such as managing an iServer cluster, adding Encyclopedia volumes to iServer, connecting to databases, updating the license, and configuring iServer properties, such as logging levels, e-mail notification, and printing from iServer.

Using BIRT iServer Integration Technology

Provides information about application programming using the SOAP-based Actuate Information Delivery API (IDAPI), including a Java developer guide and sections on logging, auto archiving, and using the Java Report Server Security Extension (RSSE).

### **About Migration and Administration Tools**

In Actuate BIRT iServer Release 11, the following utilities are obsolete and no longer exist:

AcExport

Formerly used to write a copy of the Encyclopedia volume metadata to a file, so the administrator can import the metadata into another release of iServer.

AcImport

Formerly used to populate an Encyclopedia volume with metadata previously written to an exported file.

In an upgrade from an earlier major release to Release 11, use the Squirrel Data Exporter and the System and Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator utilities that Actuate provides to migrate Encyclopedia volume metadata from the Squirrel database to an alternative RDBMS. Use the Encyclopedia Data Store Upgrader utility to upgrade an earlier Release 11 installation to a newer Release 11 service pack.

Back up the database using the utilities that the RDBMS provides. For example, PostgreSQL provides the pg\_dump and pg\_restore utilities create and restore a database backup.

Use operating system or other third-party tools to backup and load designs, documents, information objects, and other iServer data objects stored in the file system. For more information on the recommended procedures to back up an iServer system and Encyclopedia volume schemas in the Release 11 environment, refer to Chapter 10, "Backing up an Encyclopedia volume," later in this book.

AcToc

Formerly used to list the contents of an export directory. In Release 11, no comparable functionality exists.

AcVerify

Formerly used to validate an offline Encyclopedia volume and repair problems.

In Release 11, use the tools available in the third-party RDBMS containing the Encyclopedia volume metadata to verify data integrity and make repairs.

AcExtern

Formerly used to convert Encyclopedia volume user security from internal to external registration to allow administration from another system, such as an LDAP server. In Release 11, use the iServer Integration Technology custom application as a reference to configure the Report Server Security Extension (RSSE) when implementing external registration.

AcIntern

Formerly used to convert Encyclopedia volume user security from external to internal registration from an LDAP or other system to iServer. In Release 11, no comparable functionality exists. For more information on how to install and configure RSSE in the Release 11 environment, refer to Chapter 11,

"Configuring iServer security," in *Configuring BIRT iServer* and Chapter 10, "Using Java Report Server Security Extension" in *Using BIRT iServer Integration Technology.* 

AcMode

Formerly used to put an Encyclopedia volume in and out of online backup mode. In Release 11, a dynamic backup no longer requires putting the system into online backup mode. The administrator performs an Encyclopedia volume metadata backup using the tools provided by the third-party RDBMS, which provides comparable features. The administrator uses standard operating system or other third-party tools to back up the data files.

AcEncycUpgrade

Formerly used to convert an older Encyclopedia volume to the latest version. In a manual Release 11 upgrade process, the administrator uses the Squirrel Data Exporter and Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator utilities to migrate the existing iServer installation to either an in-place or a new, side-by-side instance of iServer Release 11. These utilities are Java programs run from the command line.

For more information on how to upgrade iServer and Encyclopedia volume to Release 11, refer to the appropriate iServer installation manual, either *Installing BIRT iServer for Windows* or *Installing BIRT iServer for Linux and UNIX*.

### Using JDBC to connect to an Encyclopedia volume database

iServer uses JDBC for connecting to an Encyclopedia volume database. The iServer run-time JRE environment uses Java 1.6. Any JDBC driver must be compatible with JRE version 1.6 or earlier.

iServer requires a JDBC driver that complies with the JDBC 3.0 specification or later. The function Driver.jdbcCompliant() must return TRUE. DatabaseMetadata .getJDBCMajorVersion() must return 3 or greater than 3.

An administrator, who decides to customize iServer to connect to a database other than the OOTB PostgreSQL database, must ensure that the JDBC driver returns adequate information about the types on the database. At a minimum, the database must return the common data types, such as integer, floating-point, and character. If the database does not return these common data types, then the database administrator must customize the database mapping framework to specify the types.

The JDBC driver must also support the following features:

- Scrollable cursor
- Retention of a cursor after commit

Update using a prepared cursor

When using connection pooling, the tracing functionality of the JDBC driver is used to capture the connection pool run-time statistics.

### **API Compatibility**

Actuate Release 11 provides full backward compatibility with existing applications. Upgrading to an Actuate Release 11 iServer that utilizes an RDBMS has no impact on any applications that utilize Actuate APIs, such as IDAPI and RSSE.

### About international character sets

iServer operates on the assumption that the volume database is configured to run with UTF-8 encoding. Any other database encoding scheme requires configuring the connection parameters to specify the database encoding. The driver must handle the conversion to UCS2.

### Administrative reports

The default iServer Encyclopedia volume contains sample BIRT reports that provide information using the metadata and data extracted from the OOTB database, including job schedule, file, and user tracking and usage and error logging. Installing the sample volume is an option in a custom installation.

### Supported operating systems

Actuate BIRT iServer Release 11 Service Pack 3 supports the following operating systems:

- Windows
- Solaris
- Linux
## Part TWO

Installing

#### Chapter

## 2

## **Installing BIRT iServer**

This chapter discusses the following topics:

- Preparing to install BIRT iServer
- Performing a new installation
- Understanding the iServer installation environment

#### Preparing to install BIRT iServer

When installing BIRT iServer Release 11, the administrator must choose to use the out-of-the-box (OOTB) PostgreSQL relational database management system (RDBMS) or another data store, such as DB2, Microsoft SQL Server, Oracle, or a pre-existing PostgreSQL instance to store Encyclopedia volume metadata. This chapter describes how to install a new instance of BIRT iServer Release 11, using the out-of-the-box (OOTB) PostgreSQL RDBMS.

For more information about installing BIRT iServer using an alternative data store, see Chapter 3, "Installing BIRT iServer using an alternative database," later in this book. For more information about upgrading an existing BIRT iServer installation, see Chapter 4, "Upgrading BIRT iServer," later in this book. For information about the new Release 11 BIRT iServer System architecture, see Chapter 1, "Understanding Actuate BIRT iServer architecture," earlier in this book.

## Creating an account with Windows administrator privileges

Before installing iServer, create a Windows user account that is a member of the Administrators group. Use this account when installing and running iServer.

The iServer user account must meet the following requirements:

Be a member of the Windows Administrators group.

The account must have privileges to access the required software and hardware, such as database servers, printers, and iServer files and folders.

Have log on as a service privilege.

If the account does not meet this requirement, the iServer installation program prompts you to configure the privilege to run the Windows Actuate iServer service.

On a new Windows Vista installation, the initial user account is not a member of the Administrators group. You must configure this user account to be a member of this group.

Before installing iServer in Windows 2003, create a Windows user account that is a member of the Power Users not the Administrators group. Make sure that this user account has permission to access any printers required for printing. Perform the installation using an account that has Administrator privileges. During the installation, when prompted to specify the user account to run the iServer service, specify the Power User account.

#### How to create a Power User account

To create a Power User account, perform the following tasks:

1 In Windows, open the Command Prompt and type:

lusrmgr.msc

- **2** In Local Users and Groups, choose Users to display the list of users.
- **3** Double-click the user to display the properties.
- 4 In Properties—General, deselect Account is disabled, if necessary.
- 5 In Properties—Member Of, choose Add and perform the following tasks:
  - 1 On Select Groups, in Enter the object names, type:

Power user

- 2 Choose Check Names then choose OK.
- 6 Exit Local Users and Groups

In a Windows installation, verify that the ICU\_DATA environment variable is set to the location of the Actuate ICU library. The Actuate installation process sets ICU\_DATA to the location of the library on the iServer machine. Change this setting, if necessary, to the location of the library. The following example shows the default path set by the iServer installation process:

ICU\_DATA= C:\WINNT\system32\

If you plan to install iServer processes on a machine controlled by a domain server, install iServer while logged into a user account controlled by the local machine, not the domain server. When you create an iServer cluster, all iServer nodes in the cluster must be installed and run under the same user account.

#### Configuring the iServer user account

Actuate recommends creating a dedicated user account for installing and running iServer. Having a dedicated user account isolates iServer-specific issues and events on a machine, making it easier to administer the environment.

#### How to configure a user account with administrator privileges

To configure a user account with administrator privileges for installing and running iServer, perform the following tasks:

1 In Windows, open the Command Prompt and type:

lusrmgr.msc

- **2** In Local Users and Groups, choose Users to display the list of users.
- **3** Double-click the user to display the properties.
- 4 In Properties—General, deselect Account is disabled, if necessary.
- **5** In Properties—Member Of, choose Add and perform the following tasks:

1 On Select Groups, in Enter the object names, type:

Administrators

- 2 Choose Check Names then choose OK.
- 6 Exit Local Users and Groups

#### Configuring log on as a service privilege

The iServer installation program prompts you to configure log on as a service privilege if the iServer user account does not have this privilege.

#### How to configure the log on as a service privilege manually

To configure the log on as a service privilege manually, perform the following tasks:

- 1 In Windows Control Panel, open Administrative Tools→Local Security Policy.
- 2 In Local Security Settings, navigate to Security Settings→Local Policies→User Rights Assignments.
- **3** In User Rights Assignments, perform the following tasks:
  - 1 Open Log on as a service Properties. Choose Add User or Group.
  - **2** In Select Users or Groups, add the user name. Choose Check Names then choose OK.
- **4** Exit Local Security Settings.

## Backing up iServer system and Encyclopedia volume metadata

The third-party database schemas that contain iServer system and Encyclopedia volume metadata are critical components of BIRT iServer System. To guard against data loss, the database administrator must back up the schemas using the tools and resources of the third-party database system.

An iServer system administrator must take all necessary precautions to ensure that the schemas are properly backed up to safeguard the metadata. Please consult Actuate Support at the time of installation if you have any questions about these backup procedures to protect against the possibility of catastrophic failure. For information on the recommended procedures to back up an iServer system and Encyclopedia volume schemas in the Release 11 environment, refer to Chapter 10, "Backing up an Encyclopedia volume," later in this book.

When installing BIRT iServer, be sure to run the same versions of all products. Upgrade all products at the same time to maintain consistency in the versions you run.

If you are a purchasing customer, you can download iServer from an Actuate ftp site or install from a product DVD. If you are evaluating BIRT iServer, you can download iServer from BIRT Exchange at the following location:

http://www.birt-exchange.com

Actuate also supports the cloud deployment of BIRT iServer using a ready-tolaunch iServer image. For more information about this installation option, see Chapter 6, "Installing BIRT iServer in a cloud," later in this book.

The following sections describe how to install a new BIRT iServer Release 11 using the available installation options.

#### Performing a new installation

Installing a new Release 11 BIRT iServer creates a default Encyclopedia volume without migrating data from a pre-existing volume. The default installation program performs the following operations:

- Installs and initializes iServer and the PostgreSQL relational database management system (RDBMS).
- Creates a database in the PostgreSQL RDBMS containing Encyclopedia volume data.
- Creates the iserver user in the PostgreSQL RDBMS to access the system.
- Creates the system and volume schema, initializing these schema with basic configuration information.
- Creates the iServer configuration file, specifying system, volume, and connection information for the default installation

The default installation program also initializes the iserver, system, and volume user passwords to the PostgreSQL superuser password.

#### Installing a new instance of BIRT iServer Release 11

The following section describes how to install a new instance of BIRT iServer Release 11 in the Windows operating system.

#### How to perform a new installation of BIRT iServer Release 11 in Windows

To install iServer, perform the following tasks:

1 If you downloaded iServer, run ActuateBIRTiServerEnterprise.exe. If you have a DVD or ftp distribution, run setup.exe. The welcome message appears, as shown in Figure 2-1. Choose Next.





2 Read and accept the license agreement, as shown in Figure 2-2. Choose Next.



Figure 2-2 Accepting the license agreement

**3** The setup installs the prerequisite components that BIRT iServer requires, as shown in Figure 2-3. Choose Next.



Figure 2-3 Installing Prerequisites

- **4** In Setup Type, select Typical to install the default configuration for a standalone iServer, as shown in Figure 2-4. Alternatively, choose Custom for one of the following reasons:
  - To install individual iServer components
  - To install a cluster node
  - To install a custom configuration for a stand-alone iServer and a supported relational database management system (RDBMS), such as DB2, Microsoft SQL Server, Oracle, or a pre-existing PostgreSQL instance for the Encyclopedia volume metadata database
  - To use an optional Open Security application to control access to iServer using an external system, such as an LDAP server

In Destination Folder, accept the default or choose a new destination folder for the Program and Data locations.

iServer uses the Program location to resolve the paths to all the binaries that it launches. The environment variable, AC\_SERVER\_HOME, points to the location of the iServer binaries. The default path for the program location is C:/Program Files/Actuate11SP3/iServer.

iServer uses the Data location to store the iServer logs, iServer Encyclopedia, including the PostgreSQL data, and all other run-time data. The environment variable, AC\_DATA\_HOME, points to the location of the iServer data. The default path for the data location is C:/Actuate/iServer/data. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setu	p	×
Setup Type Please choose the setup type.		
61	Click the type of setup you prefer.	
	O Typical Program installs the most common options. Recommended for most users.	
	Custom Choose the options to install. Recommended for advanced users.	
	Destination Folders	
E E	Program location:	
	C:\Program Files\Actuate11SP3\iServer	
LT I	Data location:	
AC	C-Vactuate/iServer/data Browse	
InstallShield	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	

Figure 2-4 Specifying typical or custom setup type

**5** In Encyclopedia Metadata Storage and System Name, select the type of Encyclopedia volume metadata database to install, as shown in Figure 2-5. This installation example demonstrates installing the bundled OOTB PostgreSQL database. In System Name, type a name for the BIRT iServer System name. iServer assigns this name to the default Encyclopedia volume. Additionally, iServer inserts this name into the names iServer creates for the Encyclopedia volume schema and the iServer system schema. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup		
Encyclopedia Metadata Storage and System Name		
Choose the location to store Er	ncyclopedia metadata and specify the system name.	
ده'	BIRT iServer uses a database to store metadata and manage files in the Encyclopedia.	
	Bundled PostgreSQL (This will be installed and configured for you.)	
	● DB2	
	🗊 Oracle	
(ai)	PostgreSQL	
Ľ,	SQL Server	
	iServer System Name	
Ð	Please specify a BIRT iServer System name.	
Act	System Name: corp	
InstallShield	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel	



- **6** On PostgreSQL Database Information, in Database Credentials, type and confirm a password, as shown in Figure 2-6. iServer creates the following accounts automatically, using this password for each account:
  - postgres

The PostgreSQL database superuser. The database superuser administers the PostgreSQL relational database management system (RDBMS).

ac\_<BIRT iServer System name>\_system

The System schema owner. iServer creates the iServer system schema and gives it this name. The installation program substitutes <BIRT iServer System name> with the system name you specified in the previous step.

 ac\_<BIRT iServer System name> The Encyclopedia schema owner. iServer creates the Encyclopedia volume schema using ac\_<BIRT iServer System name>.

In Port, accept the default value of 8432. Alternatively, type a different port. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setu PostgreSQL Database Inforr The PostgreSQL RDBMS will be	p 💌 💌 nation installed to store the iServer data.
Actuate DPC	BIRT iServer uses the PostgreSQL RDBMS to store configuration information and Encyclopedia volume netadata.         PostgreSQL will be installed and configured for you with the following accounts:         System schema owner: ac_corp_system         Encyclopedia schema owner: ac_corp         Please specify the password you want to assign to these accounts, and the port to use for PostgreSQL.         Database Credentials         Password:         Confirm password:         Database Condentials         Password:         Password:         Basse Contection Information         Port:       8432
InstallShield	< Back Cancel



If prompted to add Log on as a service privilege, choose Yes, as shown in Figure 2-7.

Attention	×
The user specified does not have ""Log On As A Service"" priv The Actuale service cannot start as this user account without th Do you want to grant this privilege to this user?	
	Yes No



7 In License File Details, select Use the license that you purchased. Choose Browse then navigate to and choose the license file, as shown in Figure 2-8. Alternatively, choose Try out the product using the included evaluation license if you do not have a purchased license. Choose Next.



Figure 2-8Specifying the license file

If installing using a named-user license, a prompt appears advising you to check that the volume does not exceed the number of registered users authorized by the license, as shown in Figure 2-9.

Question	X
?	You are using a Named User License. Please make sure that the internal or external Encyclopedia volume does not exceed the number of registered users authorized by the license. Please contact the Actuate Customer Support Center or licensing@actuate.com for further assistance.
	Click Yes to continue or No to abort the installation.
	Yes No

Figure 2-9 Viewing the named-user license question

Choose Yes to continue the installation.

**8** In Locale Information, choose Next to accept the default language and time zone, as shown in Figure 2-10.

Alternatively, choose the language and locale settings for your region.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup		
Locale Information Please specify default locale inf	omation.	
้อม	Specify the language and time zone for the iServer. This will be the default for all users.	
Č	Language: English (United States)	
Actuate	Time zone: America/Los_Angeles (America/Los_Angeles)	
InstallShield	< Back Next > Cancel	

Figure 2-10 Specifying locale information

**9** In Specify Profiles, type the user name, password, and confirm the password for the account used to start the Actuate iServer 11 service, as shown in Figure 2-11. The account must be a member of the Administrators group. Actuate recommends that you limit access to this account for security reasons.

If you are installing on Windows 2003, specify a user account that is in the Power Users not the Administrators group. A user account in the Administrators group cannot start the Actuate 11 BIRT iServer service.

Accept Automatically start the Actuate BIRT iServer 11 service when Windows boots, as shown in Figure 2-11. If you deselect this option, you must start the service manually from Windows Services. Choose Next.

**10** In System Configuration Password, type and confirm a password for Configuration Console, as shown in Figure 2-12. For both Configuration Console and Management Console, the default user name is Administrator. The Administrator account for Management Console has no initial password. You can log in to these consoles and change the password settings after installing iServer. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup		×
Specify Profiles		
Please specify account information.		
Actuate	Server runs as a service on Windows. Specily the account information to use. Important Note. If you are installing on Windows 2003, please select a windows user account that is in the Power User NIOT the administrator group. User name: Administrator Password: Confirm password: Automatically start iServer when Windows boots.	
InstallShield	< Back Next >	Cancel

Figure 2-11 Specifying an account for running the iServer service

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup		
System Configuration Password		
Specify the system configurati	on password.	
ية.	Specify the password you want to use for the iServer Configuration Console. This password is only for the Configuration Console.	
te	Confirm password:	
Actua	Note: The default username and password for iServer Management Console is: User name: Administrator Password: [no password]	
InstallShield	< Back Next > Cancel	



**11** In Start Copying Files, review the settings shown in Figure 2-13. Choose Next.

Setup Status displays an indicator showing how the installation is progressing, as shown in Figure 2-14.



Figure 2-13 Reviewing settings before copying files



Figure 2-14 Viewing setup status

During installation, a command prompt appears, displaying the run-time commands and messages from the initialization process of the PostgreSQL RDBMS and Encyclopedia volume schema, as shown in Figure 2-15.



Figure 2-15 Initializing the PostgreSQL RDBMS

A prompt appears, asking if you want to install the pgAdmin database administration tool for the PostgreSQL RDBMS, as shown in Figure 2-16. Choose Yes.

Question	× · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
?	Pp4dmin is a graphical user interface administration tool for PostgreSQL database. It is also available from http://www.ppadmin.org. The version we include is pp4dmin v1.10. Do you want to install k?
	Click Yes to install it now or No to install it later.
	Yes No

#### Figure 2-16 Choosing to install the pgAdmin tool

Actuate BIRT iServer Setup appears, then pgAdmin III Setup appears, as shown in Figure 2-17.



Figure 2-17 Viewing Actuate BIRT iServer and pgAdmin III Setup

**12** In pgAdmin III Setup, perform the following tasks:

- 1 In Welcome, shown in Figure 2-17, choose Next.
- 2 In End-User License Agreement, select I accept the terms in the License Agreement, as shown in Figure 2-18. Choose Next.

pgAdmin III 1.10 Setup
End-User License Agreement Please read the following license agreement carefully
pgAdmin III
Copyright (c) 2002 - 2009, The pgAdmin Development Team
Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose, without fee, and without a written agreement is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this paragraph and the following two paragraphs appear in all copies.
IN NO EVENT SHALL THE PGADMIN DEVELOPMENT TEAM BE LIABLE TO ANY PARTY FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES INCLUDINGLOST PROFITS ARISING OUT
☑ I accept the terms in the License Agreement
Print Back Next Cancel

Figure 2-18 Accepting the license agreement

3 In Custom Setup, review the features to be installed, as shown in Figure 2-19. Choose Next.

🛃 pgAdmin III 1.10 Setup	
Custom Setup Select the way you want features to be installed.	LQ Y
Click the icons in the tree below to change the way	features will be installed.
pgAdmin III - PostgreSQL Tools     pgAdmin III - PostgreSQL Utilitie    I     Thernationalisation	Management and administration tools for the PostgreSQL DBMS
	This feature requires 0KB on your hard drive. It has 2 of 2 subfeatures selected. The subfeatures require 25MB on your hard drive.
Location: C:\Program Files\pgAdmin III\	Browse
Reset Disk Usage Ba	ck Next Cancel

Figure 2-19 Viewing the features to be installed

4 In Ready to Install pgAdmin III, shown in Figure 2-20, choose Install.





Installing pgAdmin III appears, as shown in Figure 2-21.

🛃 pgAdmin III 1.10 Setup	_
Installing pgAdmin III 1.10	Q Y
Please wait while the Setup Wizard installs pgAdmin III 1.10.	
Status:	
Back Next	Cancel

Figure 2-21 Installing pgAdmin III

**5** When Completed the pgAdmin III Setup Wizard appears, as shown in Figure 2-22, choose Finish to exit the wizard.





Choose Finish to exit the wizard, as shown in Figure 2-23.



Figure 2-23 Exiting the installation wizard

**13** The installation program prompts you to install the online help from the following location:

http://www.actuate.com

Alternatively, you can install the online help and manuals in PDF format using the Actuate Localization and Online Documentation media. Figure 2-24 shows the prompt.

Actuate iServer - InstallShield Wizard			
Ū,	This product accesses online help from the recommended location, http://www.actuate.com. To install the online help and manuals in PDF format on your local system, use the "Actuate Localization and Online Documentation" installation media.		
	OK		

Figure 2-24 Viewing the install online help and manuals prompt

The installation program installs shortcuts on the desktop, as shown in Figure 2-25.



Figure 2-25Viewing BIRT iServer shortcuts on the desktop

These shortcuts provide access to the following iServer components:

iServer Management Console

Launches Management Console to set up user accounts and run reports.

BIRT iServer 11

Opens Welcome to Actuate BIRT iServer from which you can log in to Information Console to perform tasks, such as accessing folders and viewing reports.

Configuration Console Log In appears, as shown in Figure 2-26. iServer is ready for use.

User name:	Administrator	
Password:		
Language:	English (United States)	
Time zone:	America/Los_Angeles	
	Log In	

**Figure 2-26** Configuration Console Log In appears

## Accessing the PostgreSQL Database Server using the pgAdmin utility

After migrating the Encyclopedia volume to Release 11, you can optionally open the pgAdmin III utility and access the PostgreSQL Database Server to browse the Encyclopedia volume database. Actuate does not support modifying the BIRT iServer PostgreSQL Database schema. Any changes to the schema made by the customer, such as the addition of an index on a table, must be recreated again manually in any future upgrade.

#### How to access the PostgreSQL Database Server using the pgAdmin utility

To access the PostgreSQL server, choose Start→Programs→pgAdmin III 1.10→pgAdmin III.

pgAdmin III appears, showing the PostgreSQL Database Server in the Object browser, as shown in Figure 2-27.



Figure 2-27 Viewing pgAdmin III

If the PostgreSQL Database Server does not appear in the Object browser, you can add the server manually by performing the following tasks:

1 In pgAdmin III, choose File→Add Server. In New Server Registration— Properties, type or select the following property values, as listed in Table 2-1.

Property	Value
Name	PostgreSQL Database Server
Host	<computer name=""></computer>
Port	8432
Maintenance DB	postgres
Username	postgres
Password	<your password="" superuser=""></your>
Store password	Not selected

 Table 2-1
 New Server Properties

	New Server Flopenies	
Property	Value	
Restore env	Selected	
Service	Actuate 11 PostgreSQL for BIRT iServer	
Connect now	Selected	

Table 2-1New Server Properties

New Server Registration—Properties appears, as shown in Figure 2-28.

New Server Registration				
Properties				
Name	Postgre5QL Database Server			
Host	urup			
Port	8432			
SSL	<b></b>			
Maintenance DB	postgres			
Username	postgres			
Password	•••••			
Store password	□			
Restore env?	<u>।</u>			
DB restriction				
Service	PostgreSQL for Actuate iServer 11			
Connect now	<b>N</b>			
Colour				
Help	OK Cancel			
	//			

Figure 2-28 Registering a new server

Choose OK.

On pgAdmin III, expand PostgreSQL Database Server, as shown in Figure 2-29.

🕸 pgAdmin III 💶 💷							
File Edit Plugins View Tools H	elp						
A C 🖬 🍡 🐻 💕 🖬 🜉 🖊 🔯 • 🗣 🕐							
Object browser X	Properties Statistics Dependencies	Dependents					
Servers (1)	Property	Value					
PostgreSQL Database Server	Description	Postgre5QL Database Server					
Databases (2)	Hostname	urup					
Group Roles (0)	T Port	8432					
E Login Roles (4)	Encryption	not encrypted					
	Maintenance database	postgres					
	Username	postgres					
	set Store password?	Yes					
	Restore environment?	Yes DestaveSOL 9.4.5, compiled by Viewal C L L build 1400, 22 bit					
	Version sumber	Postgrebou 6.4.5, complied by visual C++ baild 1400, 52-bit					
	I ast system OID	11563					
	Connected?	Yes					
	Up since	7/14/2011 3:19:55 PM					
	Autovacuum	running					
	4						
	SQL pane	X					
Retrieving Server details Done.							

Figure 2-29 Viewing PostgreSQL Database Server properties

**2** In Object browser, expand Databases—iserver, iserver—Schemas, Tablespaces, and Login Roles to review the server and database installation, as shown in Figure 2-30.

🕅 pgAdmin III 📃 🔤 🗙				
	- 🗊 🖉 📮	?		
Object browser     X       Servers (1)     Database Server 8.4 (urup:8432)       Databases (2)     Server 1       Servers (2)     Server (2)       Server (2)     Server (2)       Server (3)     Server (2)       Server (3)     Server (3)	Properties Statistics Dependencies Property Name OID OUD OWNEr ACL Tablespace Default tablespace Encoding Collation Collation Collation Conservices?	Dependents       Value       Iserver       16336       postgress       (postgress-CTc/postgres,urup=c/postgres,iserver=c/post       pg_default       UTF6       C       C       Vare		
	Connected? Connection limit System database?	Yes -1 No X		
Replication (0)     postgres     Tablespaces (2)     pg_default     group Roles (0)     Login Roles (4)     urup     system     iserver     postgres	Database: iserver DROP DATABASE iserver; CFEATE DATABASE iserver WITH OWMER = postgres ENCODING = 'UIT8' LC_OLLATE = 'C' LC_CITYEE = 'C' CONNECTION LIMIT = GRANT ALL ON DATABASE iserver	1; er TO postgres;		
Retrieving Database details Done. 0.00 secs				



The BIRT iServer uninstall process can optionally remove the iServer installation directory containing the encyc folder, which by default contains the postgres database directory. The uninstall process does not uninstall the pgAdmin III administration tool, a PostgreSQL database not residing in the AC\_DATA\_HOME/encyc directory, or another third-party database used to store the Encyclopedia volume data. You must uninstall these components separately.

#### Understanding the iServer installation environment

The following sections provide supplementary information about the iServer installation environment that is useful for an administrator to know.

## About migrating an earlier iServer release to Actuate 11

To upgrade an iServer earlier than Release 8 Service Pack 1, you must first upgrade to Release 8 Service Pack 1, 9, or 10 then upgrade to Release 11. To upgrade from an earlier release to Actuate 11 by replacing the older version, install Release 11 in the same directory as the earlier release, or perform a side-byside installation, as described in Chapter 4, "Upgrading BIRT iServer."

The upgrade program preserves any previous iServer configuration information and reuses the earlier settings. The installation program resolves any differences in default values between releases, ignoring old configuration defaults in favor of new default values. For example, the installation does not prompt the user for port information and machine name. The installation detects the current port numbers and machine name and keeps those settings.

## About running different releases on the same machine

A BIRT iServer Release 11 can coexist on the same machine with an earlier major release, such as Release 10, and any associated minor release, such as Release 10 Service Pack 1.

Actuate does not support running multiple releases from the same version on a machine. For example, you cannot run Release 11 and Release 11 Service Pack 3 on the same machine.

To run different iServer major releases on the same machine, install the releases in separate directories. Change the default port settings for one release to enable running both versions at the same time.

#### About performance and disk space issues

During an upgrade installation, the following operations can consume more disk space and take longer than a fresh installation:

- File comparison
- The copy operation to back up original files

During an upgrade, disk space requirements typically double. The installation routine copies files to the local machine for comparison between the original files and the new files. If you perform multiple upgrade installations, the installation routine consumes even more disk space for the backup files you need to restore previous installations.

#### About upgrading an iServer with resource groups

When you upgrade BIRT iServer System, iServer creates a resource group on an iServer node that has the Factory service and the View service enabled. If no node has the Factory service and the View service enabled, iServer creates resource groups with zero Factory processes.

#### About the Java Software Development Kit

The iServer installation routine installs the JDK files in:

/Program Files/Common Files/Actuate/11.0/JDK160

To use a different JDK with iServer, change the files in the installation directory or change the values of the following environment variables:

- AC\_JAVA\_HOME
- AC\_JVM\_HOME
- AC\_JRE\_HOME
- AC\_JRE64\_HOME

Using an earlier release of JDK can cause some Actuate features to fail or to work improperly. For example, using an earlier release of JDK can cause Actuate products to display charts incorrectly.

The following types of Actuate report object executable files use AC\_JRE\_HOME and AC\_JVM\_HOME:

- Files containing charts use AC\_JVM\_HOME to locate the java.exe to generate the chart.
- Files using the Actuate Java Object Interface use AC\_JVM\_HOME to locate the JVM DLL or library.

#### Accessing JAR files for report generation

To generate some documents, iServer requires access to jar files in the Jar directory of the iServer installation files. In Windows, include the location of the jar file in the CLASSPATH.

#### **Gathering LDAP information**

An optional Open Security application ships with Actuate iServer Integration Technology. This application uses a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) security database to control access to the Encyclopedia volume. To use the Open Security application, you need to perform a custom installation and specify the following additional information:

- Name of the LDAP server and the port on which the LDAP server listens
- LDAP account and password used to query the LDAP server
- LDAP server organization that contains the Actuate users, roles, and groups
- LDAP base domain names and object classes that contain Actuate user, role, and group information
- LDAP group name assigned as the Actuate Encyclopedia volume administrator role

Actuate Open Security uses an LDAP configuration file to map the Encyclopedia volume user information to LDAP object attributes. For more information on Actuate Open Security, see the reference implementations available in Actuate Server Integration Technology.

#### **Following Best Practices**

Before deploying a new release in a production environment, Actuate recommends testing the installation.

#### Using a test environment

Set up a test environment then migrate to Actuate 11 when the testing is complete. Earlier Actuate releases and Actuate 11 can coexist on the same machine. You must install products at different release levels in different folders. You cannot mix Actuate products from different release levels. For example, you cannot use Actuate 10 design tools with BIRT iServer Release 11.

How and when you upgrade to Actuate 11 depends on your site configuration and requirements. Complete the following general tasks in this order to determine how to upgrade your site to Actuate 11:

• Create a test environment for Actuate 11. The test environment can be on the same machine that hosts the earlier Actuate installation or on a separate machine.

- Install the software in the test environment and upgrade earlier versions of designs and files. Also update any custom applications that you built using Actuate iServer Integration Technology. Verify that your applications work properly in the test environment.
- Ask application developers and a few users to perform some typical tasks in the test environment.
- Create a production staging area.
- Install the remaining Actuate 11 desktop products, if required, in production environments on the user workstations. Verify that the desktop products function properly.
- Schedule a low-impact time to switch to Actuate 11 to complete the transition.

#### Setting up a production staging area

A production staging area is one that you can use for testing and also configure as the live production system. The production staging area can be a separate configuration on the live production machine or a separate machine. You can install all Actuate 11 products or the Actuate 11 server products and a subset of the desktop products.

If you plan to test Actuate 11 desktop products, identify which users to include in the final testing. Developers and users can then confirm that applications perform as expected in the Actuate 11 production staging environment.

Complete the following general tasks to test Actuate 11:

- Install BIRT iServer Release 11 software in a production staging area.
- Install Actuate 11 desktop software on the test user machines. Using separate folders, you can install Actuate 11 desktop software in conjunction with the earlier desktop software. Users can continue to use the existing Actuate software in production while testing the Actuate 11 desktop software.
- Verify that the Actuate 11 production staging environment works correctly.
- Install the remaining Actuate 11 desktop products, if you installed a subset earlier.
- Verify that all the Actuate 11 desktop products work correctly.
- Begin setting up a production environment, described in the following section.

#### Setting up a production environment

When testing is complete, confirm that your applications work as expected in the Actuate 11 environment. Set up the production environment and schedule a date and time to switch from earlier versions to Actuate 11.

When you switch to Actuate 11, use the following procedure list as a general guideline:

- Shut down all Actuate servers.
- Back up earlier Actuate Encyclopedia volumes.
- Upgrade existing Encyclopedia volumes and archive volumes. Install upgraded design and document files.

To upgrade from Actuate 10, for example, perform one of the following operations:

 If you are replacing your Actuate 10 system, upgrade Encyclopedia volumes by installing Actuate 11 in the same directory, overwriting Actuate 10.

Uninstall BIRT iServer Release 11 from your production staging area and reinstall it in place of your existing Actuate 10 installation. The installer upgrades the Encyclopedia volumes when it starts.

If you are running both Actuate 10 and Actuate 11, you can migrate volumes to the Actuate 11 location.

Use the Actuate 11 Squirrel Data Exporter and Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator utilities to migrate an Actuate 10 Encyclopedia volume to the Actuate 11 Encyclopedia location. Confirm that all partitions for Actuate 11 are in the active state before you use these utilities.

Install upgraded design and document files.

Encyclopedia volume data is located separately from iServer binaries in Release 11.

- Start BIRT iServer Release 11.
- Inform users that they can start using Actuate 11 design tool products.

# 3

## Installing BIRT iServer using an alternative database

This chapter discusses the following topics:

- Preparing to install BIRT iServer using an alternative database
- Installing an Encyclopedia volume that uses an alternative database

## Preparing to install BIRT iServer using an alternative database

When installing BIRT iServer Release 11, the administrator must choose to use the out-of-the-box (OOTB) PostgreSQL database or another data store, such as DB2, Microsoft SQL Server, Oracle, or a pre-existing PostgreSQL instance to store Encyclopedia volume metadata. This chapter describes how to install a new instance of BIRT iServer Release 11, using an alternative data store.

For all database systems other than OOTB PostgreSQL, the database administrator must create the system and Encyclopedia volume schemas and an iserver application user before installing BIRT iServer. During the iServer installation, the administrator provides the iServer system name, plus the system and Encyclopedia volume schema owner, and iServer application user credentials. The iServer installation program creates the necessary database structures, then loads the metadata.

## Creating an account with Windows administrator privileges

Before installing iServer, create a Windows user account that is a member of the Administrators group. Use this account when installing and running iServer.

The iServer user account must meet the following requirements:

- Be a member of the Windows Administrators group.
   The account must have privileges to access the required software and hardware, such as database servers, printers, and iServer files and folders.
- Have log on as a service privilege.

If the account does not meet this requirement, the iServer installation program prompts you to configure the privilege to run the Windows Actuate iServer service.

On a new Windows Vista installation, the initial user account is not a member of the Administrators group. You must configure this user account to be a member of this group.

When installing iServer in Windows 2003, create a Windows user account that is a member of the Power Users not the Administrators group. Make sure that the Account has permission to access any printers required for printing. Perform the installation using an account that has Administrator privileges. During the installation, when prompted to specify the user account to run the iServer service, specify the Power User account.

For more information about configuring a Power User and iServer account and log on as a service privilege, see "Creating an account with Windows administrator privileges," in Chapter 2, "Installing BIRT iServer."

## Creating the iServer system and Encyclopedia volume schemas and iserver user in an alternative database

Before installing BIRT iServer to use a pre-existing RDBMS, the database administrator must first run SQL scripts that contain the appropriate Data Definition Language (DDL) statements to create a database and the following schema owner and application user accounts with appropriate privileges:

- iServer system schema owner
- Encyclopedia volume schema owner
- iserver application user

Restrict schema and the iServer application user names to alphanumeric and underscore characters with an initial alphabetic character in the pattern [a-z][a-z 0-9]\*. Do not use a hyphen.

In an environment containing multiple Encyclopedia volume schemas, Actuate recommends using one iserver application user with privileges on all the schemas. This configuration allows iServer to maximize connection pooling and minimize the number of connections to the RDBMS.

### Creating the system and Encyclopedia volume schemas and iserver user in a pre-existing PostgreSQL database

The following SQL scripts provide an example of DDL statements that create the database, schema owners, and an iserver application user role, then grant privileges in a pre-existing PostgreSQL server installation. These steps are not necessary when adding an Encyclopedia volume to an existing schema.

The PostgreSQL database administrator may need to modify these SQL command examples for a specific PostgreSQL installation. In the commands, substitute system and volume schema names appropriate to your environment.

#### Creating a database

Connect to the PostgreSQL system database as a user with full administrator privileges, typically named postgres, and execute the following SQL commands to create a database named iserver:

```
CREATE DATABASE iserver
WITH OWNER = "postgres"
TEMPLATE = template0 ENCODING = 'UTF-8';
REVOKE ALL ON DATABASE iserver FROM PUBLIC;
```

Create the plpgsql procedural language by executing the following SQL command:

CREATE LANGUAGE plpgsql;

Plpgsql is a superset of PostgreSQL SQL that supports advanced programming features, such as variables, conditional expressions, iterative constructs, and events. If the language is already installed, an error message appears. If so, ignore the message.

#### Creating the system schema owner

In an iServer installation, the system schema owner must have the same name as the system schema. The system schema owner has all privileges on the schema used for the system data store and can grant privileges to other users. The system schema owner must be able to create database objects, such as tables and indexes.

The following commands create a user role named ac\_corp\_system with appropriate privileges to connect to the previously created iserver database. Connect to the PostgreSQL system database as a user with full administrator privileges and execute the following SQL commands:

```
CREATE ROLE ac_corp_system LOGIN PASSWORD 'password';
GRANT CONNECT ON DATABASE iserver TO ac_corp_system;
```

#### Creating the Encyclopedia volume schema owner

In an iServer installation, the Encyclopedia volume schema owner must have the same name as the Encyclopedia volume schema. The Encyclopedia volume schema owner has all privileges on the schema used for the Encyclopedia volume data store and can grant privileges to other users. The Encyclopedia volume schema owner must be able to create database objects, such as tables and indexes.

The following commands create a user role named ac\_corp with appropriate privileges to connect to the previously created iserver database. Connect to the PostgreSQL system database as a user with full administrator privileges and execute the following SQL commands:

CREATE ROLE ac\_corp LOGIN PASSWORD 'password'; GRANT CONNECT ON DATABASE iserver TO ac\_corp;

#### Creating the iServer application user

iServer connects to the database as an application user. The application user requires only the privileges necessary to perform basic SQL Data Manipulation Language (DML) operations, such as SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE. This user does not require privileges to create or modify the structure of the database.

The following SQL script provides an example of DDL statements that create the iserver user role in a pre-existing PostgreSQL database. Connect to the

PostgreSQL system database as a user with full administrator privileges and execute the following SQL commands:

```
CREATE ROLE iserver LOGIN PASSWORD 'password';
GRANT CONNECT ON DATABASE iserver TO iserver;
```

#### Creating the system schema

The system schema must have the same name as the system schema owner. The following commands create a system schema named ac\_corp\_system, owned by the user, ac\_corp\_system, then grant privileges to use that schema to the application user role named iserver. Connect to the iserver application database, not the PostgreSQL system database, as a user with full administrator privileges and execute the following commands:

CREATE SCHEMA ac\_corp\_system AUTHORIZATION ac\_corp\_system; GRANT USAGE ON SCHEMA ac\_corp\_system TO iserver;

#### Creating the Encyclopedia volume schema

In an iServer installation, the Encyclopedia volume schema must have the same name as the Encyclopedia volume schema owner. The following commands create an Encyclopedia volume schema named ac\_corp, owned by the user, ac\_corp, then grant privileges to use the schema to the application user role named iserver. Connect to the iserver application database, not the PostgreSQL system database, as a user with full administrator privileges and execute the following commands:

CREATE SCHEMA ac\_corp AUTHORIZATION ac\_corp; GRANT USAGE ON SCHEMA ac\_corp TO iserver;

### Creating the system and Encyclopedia volume schemas and iserver user in a pre-existing Oracle database

In Oracle, there is a one-to-one relationship between a user and a schema. A schema is not a separate entity. The iServer system schema owner has the same name as the system schema. The Encyclopedia volume schema owner also has the same name as the Encyclopedia volume schema.

The following SQL scripts provide an example of DDL statements that create the database, schema owners, and iserver application user, then grant privileges in a pre-existing Oracle database. These steps are not necessary when adding an Encyclopedia volume to an existing schema.

The Oracle database administrator may need to modify these SQL command examples for the specific Oracle installation. In the commands, substitute system and schema names appropriate to your environment.

#### Creating the system schema owner

The iServer system schema owner has all privileges on the schema used for the system data store and can grant privileges to other users. The system schema owner must be able to create database objects, such as tables and indexes.

The following SQL script provides an example of DDL statements that create the iServer system schema owner and grant privileges in a pre-existing Oracle database:

```
DROP USER ac_corp_system CASCADE;
CREATE USER ac_corp_system
    IDENTIFIED BY password
    DEFAULT TABLESPACE USERS
    TEMPORARY TABLESPACE TEMP;
GRANT CREATE TABLE TO ac_corp_system;
GRANT CREATE VIEW TO ac_corp_system;
GRANT CREATE SEQUENCE TO ac_corp_system;
GRANT CREATE ANY TYPE TO ac_corp_system;
GRANT CREATE PROCEDURE TO ac_corp_system;
GRANT CREATE OPERATOR TO ac_corp_system;
GRANT CREATE TRIGGER TO ac_corp_system;
GRANT CREATE SESSION TO ac_corp_system;
ALTER USER ac_corp_system QUOTA UNLIMITED ON USERS;
COMMIT;
```

#### Creating the Encyclopedia volume schema owner

The Encyclopedia volume schema owner has all privileges on the schema used for the volume data store and can grant privileges to other users. The Encyclopedia volume schema owner must be able to create database objects, such as tables and indexes.

The following SQL script provides an example of DDL statements that create the Encyclopedia volume schema owner and grant privileges in a pre-existing Oracle database:

```
CREATE USER ac_corp

IDENTIFIED BY password

DEFAULT TABLESPACE USERS

TEMPORARY TABLESPACE TEMP;

GRANT CREATE TABLE TO ac_corp;

GRANT CREATE VIEW TO ac_corp;

GRANT CREATE SEQUENCE TO ac_corp;

GRANT CREATE PROCEDURE TO ac_corp;

GRANT CREATE OPERATOR TO ac_corp;

GRANT CREATE TRIGGER TO ac_corp;

GRANT CREATE SESSION TO ac_corp;

ALTER USER ac corp QUOTA UNLIMITED ON USERS;
```
COMMIT;

#### Creating the iServer application user

iServer connects to the database as an application user. The application user requires only the privileges necessary to perform basic SQL Data Manipulation Language (DML) operations, such as SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE. This user does not require privileges to create or modify the structure of the database.

The iServer installation process automatically grants the schema privileges required by the application user. The RDBMS database administrator does not have to configure these privileges manually.

The following SQL script provides an example of DDL statements that create the iserver user in a pre-existing Oracle database:

DROP USER iserver CASCADE; CREATE USER iserver IDENTIFIED BY password DEFAULT TABLESPACE USERS TEMPORARY TABLESPACE TEMP; GRANT CREATE SESSION TO iserver; ALTER USER iserver QUOTA UNLIMITED ON USERS; COMMIT;

## Creating the system and Encyclopedia volume schemas and iserver user in a pre-existing SQL Server database

The following Transact-SQL scripts provide an example of DDL statements that create the database, schema owners, and iserver application user, then grant privileges in a pre-existing SQL Server database. These steps are not necessary when adding an Encyclopedia volume to an existing schema.

The SQL Server database administrator may need to modify these SQL command examples for the specific SQL Server installation. In the commands, substitute system and schema names appropriate to your environment.

## Creating a database

Connect to the SQL Server master database as a user with full system administrator, sysadmin, privileges and execute the following Transact-SQL commands to create a database named iserver:

```
USE master;
GO
CREATE DATABASE iserver
COLLATE SQL_Latin1_General_CP1_CI_AS;
GO
```

Any database created for iServer processing must use a case-insensitive collation, such as SQL\_Latin1\_General\_CP1\_CI\_AS. The names of case-insensitive collations typically include the letters, CI.

## Creating the system schema owner

In an iServer installation, the system schema owner must have the same name as the system schema. The system schema owner has all privileges on the schema used for the system data store and can grant privileges to other users. The system schema owner must be able to create database objects, such as tables and indexes.

The following commands create a user named ac\_corp\_system to function as the system schema owner with appropriate privileges to connect to the previously created iserver database. Connect to the iserver database as a user with full administrator privileges and execute the following SQL commands:

```
USE iserver;
CREATE LOGIN ac_corp_system
WITH PASSWORD = 'password';
CREATE USER ac_corp_system
FOR LOGIN ac_corp_system
WITH DEFAULT_SCHEMA = ac_corp_system;
GO
GRANT CONNECT TO ac_corp_system;
GRANT CREATE TABLE TO ac_corp_system;
GRANT CREATE VIEW TO ac_corp_system;
GRANT CREATE FUNCTION TO ac_corp_system;
GRANT CREATE PROCEDURE TO ac_corp_system;
GO
```

In the SQL Server environment, the default schema does not have to exist when creating the user. The system administrator can create the schema later.

## Creating the Encyclopedia volume schema owner

In an iServer installation, the Encyclopedia volume schema owner must have the same name as the Encyclopedia volume schema. The Encyclopedia volume schema owner has all privileges on the schema used for the Encyclopedia data store and can grant privileges to other users. The Encyclopedia schema owner must be able to create database objects, such as tables and indexes.

The following commands create an Encyclopedia volume schema owner named ac\_corp with appropriate privileges to connect to the previously created iserver database. Connect to the iserver database as a user with full administrator privileges and execute the following SQL commands:

```
USE iserver;
CREATE LOGIN ac_corp
WITH PASSWORD = 'password';
```

```
CREATE USER ac_corp
FOR LOGIN ac_corp
WITH DEFAULT_SCHEMA = ac_corp;
GO
GRANT CONNECT TO ac_corp;
GRANT CREATE TABLE TO ac_corp;
GRANT CREATE VIEW TO ac_corp;
GRANT CREATE FUNCTION TO ac_corp;
GRANT CREATE PROCEDURE TO ac_corp;
GO
```

In the SQL Server environment, the default schema does not have to exist when creating the user. The system administrator can create the schema later.

## Creating the iServer application user

iServer connects to the database as an application user. The application user requires only the privileges necessary to perform basic SQL Data Manipulation Language (DML) operations, such as SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE. This user does not require privileges to create or modify the structure of the database.

The following SQL script provides an example of DDL statements that create the iserver user in a pre-existing SQL Server database. Connect to the iserver database as a user with full administrator privileges and execute the following SQL commands:

```
USE iserver;
CREATE LOGIN iserver WITH PASSWORD = 'password';
CREATE USER iserver FOR LOGIN iserver;
GO
GRANT CONNECT TO iserver;
GO
```

## Creating the system schema

The system schema must have the same name as the system schema owner. The following commands create a system schema named ac\_corp\_system and grant ownership to the user named ac\_corp\_system. Connect to the iserver application database, not the SQL Server master database, as a user with full administrator privileges and execute the following commands:

```
USE iserver;
GO
CREATE SCHEMA ac_corp_system AUTHORIZATION ac_corp_system;
GO
```

## Creating the Encyclopedia volume schema

In an iServer installation, the Encyclopedia volume schema must have the same name as the Encyclopedia volume schema owner. The following commands create an Encyclopedia volume schema named ac\_corp and grant ownership to the user named ac\_corp. Connect to the iserver application database, not the SQL Server master database, as a user with full administrator privileges and execute the following commands:

```
USE iserver;
GO
CREATE SCHEMA ac_corp AUTHORIZATION ac_corp;
GO
```

## Creating the system and Encyclopedia volume schemas and iserver user in a pre-existing DB2 database

The following SQL scripts provide an example of DDL statements that create the database, schema owners, and iserver application user, then grant privileges in a pre-existing DB2 database. These steps are not necessary when adding an Encyclopedia volume to an existing schema.

The DB2 database administrator (DBA) may need to modify these SQL command examples for the specific DB2 installation. In the commands, substitute system and schema names appropriate to your environment.

## Creating user accounts

DB2 uses operating system accounts instead of internally defined database users. A database user must exist as an operating system user account, using the native security mechanisms that the operating system provides, before a user can be referenced in a DB2 system. Once a user exists in the operating system, the DB2 system administrator can assign privileges to that user using DDL statements.

## **Creating a database**

Actuate requires a DB2 database to support VARGRAPHIC columns. DB2 does not support UCS-2 or UTF-16 as the primary encodings for a database. DB2 also sizes the VARCHAR data type in bytes, not characters. To work around these issues, iServer uses VARGRAPHIC instead of VARCHAR. VARGRAPHIC stores UTF-16 data and sizes this data in characters.

Actuate also requires a DB2 database to use a case-insensitive collation, such as UCA500R1\_LEN\_S2, which is not the default. DB2 supports this functionality only in DB2 9.5 Fix Pack 1 and later versions.

To create the iserver database, connect to the DB2 system as a user with full administrator privileges and execute the following SQL command:

```
CREATE DATABASE iserver
AUTOMATIC STORAGE YES
```

```
USING CODESET UTF-8
TERRITORY US
COLLATE USING UCA500R1_LEN_S2
PAGESIZE 8192
```

## Creating the system schema owner

The iServer system schema owner has all privileges on the schema used for the system data store and can grant privileges to other users. The system schema owner must be able to create database objects, such as tables and indexes.

To create the iServer system schema owner and grant privileges in a pre-existing DB2 database, execute the following command:

GRANT CONNECT, LOAD ON DATABASE TO USER ac\_corp\_system;

## Creating the Encyclopedia volume schema owner

The Encyclopedia volume schema owner has all privileges on the schema used for the volume data store and can grant privileges to other users. The Encyclopedia schema owner must be able to create database objects, such as tables and indexes.

To create the Encyclopedia volume schema owner and grant privileges in a preexisting DB2 database, execute the following command:

GRANT CONNECT, LOAD ON DATABASE TO USER ac\_corp;

## Creating the iServer application user

iServer connects to the database as an application user. The application user requires only the privileges necessary to perform basic SQL Data Manipulation Language (DML) operations, such as SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE. This user does not require privileges to create or modify the structure of the database.

The iServer installation process automatically grants the schema privileges required by the application user. The RDBMS database administrator does not have to configure these privileges manually.

To create the iserver user in a pre-existing DB2 database, execute the following command:

GRANT CONNECT ON DATABASE TO USER iserver;

## Creating the system schema

The system schema must have the same name as the system schema owner. To create a system schema named ac\_corp\_system and grant ownership to the user named ac\_corp\_system, execute the following command:

CREATE SCHEMA ac\_corp\_system AUTHORIZATION ac\_corp\_system;

## Creating the Encyclopedia volume schema

In an iServer installation, the Encyclopedia volume schema must have the same name as the Encyclopedia volume schema owner. To create an Encyclopedia volume schema named ac\_corp and grant ownership to the user named ac\_corp, execute the following command:

CREATE SCHEMA ac\_corp AUTHORIZATION ac\_corp;

## Backing up iServer system and Encyclopedia volume metadata

The third-party database schemas that contain iServer system and Encyclopedia volume metadata are critical components of BIRT iServer System. To guard against data loss, the database administrator must back up the schemas using the tools and resources of the third-party database system.

An iServer system administrator must take all necessary precautions to ensure that the schemas are properly backed up to safeguard the metadata. Please consult Actuate Support at the time of installation if you have any questions about these backup procedures to protect against the possibility of catastrophic failure. For information on the recommended procedures to back up an iServer system and Encyclopedia volume schemas in the Release 11 environment, see Chapter 10, "Backing up an Encyclopedia volume," later in this book.

When installing BIRT iServer, be sure to run the same versions of all products. Upgrade all products at the same time to maintain consistency in the versions you run.

If you are a purchasing customer, you can download iServer from an Actuate ftp site or install from a product DVD. If you are evaluating BIRT iServer, you can download iServer from BIRT Exchange at the following location:

http://www.birt-exchange.com

Actuate also supports the cloud deployment of BIRT iServer using a ready-tolaunch iServer image. For more information about this installation option, see Chapter 6, "Installing BIRT iServer in a cloud," later in this book. For information about the new Release 11 BIRT iServer System architecture, see Chapter 1, "Understanding Actuate BIRT iServer architecture," earlier in this book.

The following section describes how to install BIRT iServer Release 11 using Microsoft SQL Server as an alternative data store.

# Installing an Encyclopedia volume that uses an alternative database

The following procedures use a pre-existing Microsoft SQL Server database and schema as an example. During the iServer installation, the administrator provides the schema owner and database user credentials. The iServer installation program creates the necessary volume database structures, then loads the metadata.

#### How to install an Encyclopedia volume that uses an alternative database

1 If you downloaded iServer, run the ActuateBIRTiServer.exe file. If you have a DVD or ftp distribution, run setup.exe in the iServer directory. The welcome message appears, as shown in Figure 3-1. Choose Next.



Figure 3-1 Viewing the welcome message

**2** Read and accept the license agreement, as shown in Figure 3-2. Choose Next.



Figure 3-2 Accepting the license agreement

**3** The setup installs the prerequisite components that BIRT iServer requires, as shown in Figure 3-3. Choose Next.



Figure 3-3 Installing Prerequisites

**4** In Setup Type, as shown in Figure 3-4, choose Typical to install a supported relational database management system (RDBMS) for the Encyclopedia

volume, such as OOTB PostgreSQL or a pre-existing DB2, Microsoft SQL Server, Oracle or PostgreSQL RDBMS.

In Destination Folder, accept the default or choose a new destination folder for the Program and Data locations.

iServer uses the Program location to resolve the paths to all the binaries that it launches. The environment variable, AC\_SERVER\_HOME, points to the location of the iServer binaries. The default path for the program location is C:/Program Files/Actuate11SP3/iServer.

iServer uses the Data location to store the iServer logs, Encyclopedia volume data, and other related data. The environment variable, AC\_DATA\_HOME, points to the iServer data location. The default path is C:/Actuate11/iServer /data.

 Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup

 Setup Type

 Please choose the setup type.

 Click the type of setup you prefer.

 • Typical

 • Typical

 • Custom

 • Choose the options to install. Recommended for most users.

 • Destination Folders

 Program location:

 • C:\Actuate\ISP3\\Server

 • Data location:

 • C:\Actuate\IServer\data

 • Browse...

Choose Next.

Figure 3-4 Specifying Typical setup type

**5** In Encyclopedia Metadata Storage, select DB2, Oracle, PostgreSQL, or SQL Server to use as a pre-existing third-party database for storing Encyclopedia volume metadata. This example uses the SQL Server RDBMS, as shown in Figure 3-5. In System Name, type a name for the BIRT iServer system. Restrict the name to alphanumeric and underscore characters with an initial alphabetic character in the pattern [a-z][a-z 0-9]\*. Do not use a hyphen.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup					
Encyclopedia Metadata Storage and System Name Choose the location to store Encyclopedia metadata and specify the system name.					
<b>a</b> 1	BIRT iServer uses a database to store metadata and manage files in the Encyclopedia.				
	Bundled PostgreSQL (This will be installed and configured for you.)				
	DB2				
	🗢 Oracle				
	💭 PostgreSQL				
Ľ,	🗢 SQL Server				
a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a	iServer System Name ————				
<b>1</b>	Please specify a BIRT iServer System name.				
	System Name: corp				
InstallShield	< Back Next > Cancel				

Figure 3-5 Choosing a third-party database

- **6** After you chose DB2, Oracle, PostgreSQL, or SQL Server in the previous step, 3rd Party Database Information appears. Depending on which alternative database you selected, provide the following database information:
  - DB2

For a pre-existing DB2 installation, type the server hostname. In Database, specify the name of the database, such as iserver. Type the port. By default, the port is 50000. You can leave IANAAppCodePage blank. In Database User credentials, specify the iserver application user and a password, as shown in Figure 3-6.

Oracle

For a pre-existing Oracle installation, type the server hostname and port. By default, the port is 1521.

In Service Name, type a valid service name, such as orcl.actuate.com, that identifies the Oracle database server on which you want to install the Encyclopedia volume metadata. Do not use just the system identifier (SID). Provide the complete reference to the server, including the domain. When using a service name, leave TNS Server Name and TNS Names File left blank. When using a Transparent Network Substrate (TNS) service, leave service name blank.

In Database User Credentials, specify the iserver application user and a password, as shown in Figure 3-7.

PostgreSQL

For a pre-existing PostgreSQL installation, type the server hostname and port. By default, the port is 5432. In Database, specify the name of the database, such as iserver. In Database User credentials, specify the iserver application user and a password, as shown in Figure 3-8.

SQL Server

For a pre-existing SQL Server installation, type the server hostname and port. By default, the port is 1433. In Database, specify the name of the database, such as iserver. In Instance, type the SQL Server instance name. In Figure 3-9, Instance contains the SQL Server default instance name. Specify the iserver application user in Database User credentials, as shown in Figure 3-9. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setu	ıp		×		
<b>3rd Party Database Information</b> Please specify the external DB2 database information for the iServer encyclopedia.					
Actuate DPC	Server: Database: Port: IANAAppCodePage: Database User Credentials: User name: Password: Confirm password:	utup iserver 50000 iserver itilliti			
InstallShield	< <u>B</u>	ack <u>N</u> ext>	Cancel		

Figure 3-6 Specifying third-party database information for DB2

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup							
<b>3rd Party Database Information</b> Please specify the Oracle database information for the iServer encyclopedia.							
Actuate DPC	Server: urup Port: 1521 TNS Server Name: Service Name: orcl.actuate.com TNS Names File: Database User Credentials - User name: iserver Password: unun Confirm password: unun						
InstallShield	< Back Next > Cancel						



Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setu	p	×
3rd Party Database Informat Please specify the external Post <u>c</u>	ion reSQL database information for the iServer encyclopedia.	
Actuate DPC	Server: urup Port: 9432 Database: iserver Database User Credentials User name: iserver Paisword: iiiiii Confirm password: iiiiii	
InstallShield	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

Figure 3-8 Specifying third-party database information for PostgreSQL

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setu	p		×			
3rd Party Database Information Discussion of the extension CDI Course details as information for the 10 meru angular dis						
Flease specily the external SQL s		ie iserver encyclopedia.				
	Server:	urup				
	Port:	1433	_			
	Datahaso'	iserver	_			
	Instance:	MSSQLSERVER				
L L	Database User Credentia	ls				
	User name:	iserver				
	Password:					
5	Confirm password:					
A I						
InstallShield		Back Next >	Cancel			
		Lion /	Cancer			



7 In Database Schema Information, type the system schema owner, password, and confirm the password in System Database Schema Credentials. Type the Encyclopedia database schema owner, password, and confirm the password in Encyclopedia Database Schema Credentials, as shown in Figure 3-10.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup						
Database Schema Information Please specify the database schema information for iServer system and encyclopedia metadata.						
Actuate	System Database Sche Schema owner: Password: Confirm password: Encyclopedia Database Schema owner: Password: Confirm password:	ema Credentials				
InstallShield	<	<u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext ≻	Cancel			

Figure 3-10 Specifying System and Encyclopedia schema passwords

**8** In License File Details, select Use the license that you purchased. Choose Browse then navigate to and choose the license file, as shown in Figure 3-11. Choose Next.



Figure 3-11 Specifying the license file

When installing using a named user license, a prompt appears advising you to check that the volume does not exceed the number of registered users authorized by the license, as shown in Figure 3-12.

Question	×
?	You are using a Named User License. Please make sure that the internal or external Encyclopedia volume does not exceed the number of registered users authorized by the license. Please contact the Actuate Customer Support Center or licensing@actuate.com for further assistance.
	Click Yes to continue or No to abort the installation.
	Yes No



Choose Yes to continue the installation.

**9** In Locale Information, choose Next to accept the default language and time zone, as shown in Figure 3-13.

Alternatively, choose the language and locale settings for your region.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup				
Locale Information Please specify default locale in	formation.			
้อม	Specify the language and time zone for the iServer. This will be the default for all users.			
Ž	Language: English (United States)			
Actuate	Time zone: America/Los_Angeles (America/Los_Angeles)			
<b>Install</b> Shield	< Back Next > Cancel			

Figure 3-13 Specifying locale information

**10** In Specify Profiles, type the user name, password, and confirm the password for the account used to start the Actuate BIRT iServer 11 service, as shown in Figure 3-14. The account must be a member of the Administrators group. Actuate recommends that you limit access to this account for security reasons.

If you are installing on Windows 2003, specify a user account that is in the Power Users not the Administrators group. A user account in the Administrators group cannot start the Actuate 11 BIRT iServer service.

Accept Automatically start the BIRT iServer 11 service when Windows boots, as shown in Figure 3-14. If you deselect this option, you must start the service manually from Windows Services. Choose Next.



Figure 3-14 Specifying the account for running the iServer service

**11** In System Configuration Password, type and confirm a password for Configuration Console, as shown in Figure 3-15. For both Configuration Console and Management Console, the default user name is Administrator. The Administrator account for Management Console has no password initially. You can log in to these consoles and change the password settings after installing iServer. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup			
System Configuration Passwo Specify the system configuratio	<b>rd</b> n password.		
۳	Specify the password you want to use for the 'Server Configuration Console. This password is only for the Configuration Console.		
Č	Password:		
ate	Confirm password:		
1 3 1	Note: The default username and password for iServer Management Console is:		
Ac	User name, Administrator Password: (no password)		
InstallShield	< Back Next > Cancel		

Figure 3-15 Specifying the password for using Configuration Console

12 In Start Copying Files, review the settings shown in Figure 3-16. Choose Next.



Figure 3-16 Reviewing settings before copying files

Setup Status displays an indicator showing how the installation is progressing, as shown in Figure 3-17.



- Figure 3-17 Viewing setup status
- **13** Choose Finish to exit the wizard, as shown in Figure 3-18.



Figure 3-18 Exiting the installation wizard

**14** The installation program prompts you to install the online help and manuals using the Actuate Localization and Online Documentation media, as shown in Figure 3-19.

Actuate i	Actuate iServer - InstallShield Wizard				
Ū,	This product accesses online help from the recommended location, http://www.actuate.com. To install the online help and manuals in PDF format on your local system, use the "Actuate Localization and Online Documentation" installation media.				
	ОК				

Figure 3-19 Viewing the install online help and manuals prompt

The installation program installs shortcuts on the desktop, as shown in Figure 3-20.





These shortcuts provide access to the following iServer components:

- iServer Management Console
   Launches Management Console to set up user accounts and run reports.
- iServer 11

Opens Welcome to Actuate iServer from which you can log in to Information Console to perform tasks, such as accessing folders and viewing reports.

Configuration Console Log In appears, as shown in Figure 3-21. iServer is ready to use.

User name:	Administrator	
Password:		
Language:	English (United States)	
Time zone:	America/Los_Angeles	
	Log In	

Figure 3-21 Configuration Console Log In appears

E.

## Chapter

# 4

# **Upgrading BIRT iServer**

This chapter discusses the following topics:

- Preparing to upgrade BIRT iServer
- Performing an automatic in-place upgrade
- Performing a manual side-by-side upgrade

## Preparing to upgrade BIRT iServer

When upgrading to BIRT iServer Release 11, the administrator must choose to use the out-of-the-box (OOTB) PostgreSQL database or another data store, such as DB2, Microsoft SQL Server, Oracle, or a pre-existing PostgreSQL instance to store Encyclopedia volume metadata. The administrator upgrades iServer and the Encyclopedia volume database using one of the following options:

Automatic in-place upgrade

Upgrades an earlier iServer system in place, such as Release 10 Service Pack 1, automatically migrating one or more existing Encyclopedia volumes during the installation process.

Manual side-by-side upgrade

Upgrades a new Release 11 iServer system in the environment side-by-side with an earlier iServer System, such as Release 10 Service Pack 1. During installation, the administrator chooses whether to install the default volume with sample designs and documents. After installation, the administrator uses the Squirrel Data Exporter and Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator utilities to migrate the volumes manually from the older system to the Release 11 iServer.

# Creating an account with Windows administrator privileges

Before installing iServer, create a Windows user account that is a member of the Administrators group. Use this account when installing and running iServer.

The iServer user account must meet the following requirements:

- Be a member of the Windows Administrators group.
   The account must have privileges to access the required software and hardware, such as database servers, printers, and iServer files and folders.
- Have log on as a service privilege.

If the account does not meet this requirement, the iServer installation program prompts you to configure the privilege to run the Windows Actuate iServer service.

On a new Windows Vista installation, the initial user account is not a member of the Administrators group. You must configure this user account to be a member of this group.

When installing iServer in Windows 2003, create a Windows user account that is a member of the Power Users not the Administrators group. Make sure that the Account has permission to access any printers required for printing. Perform the installation using an account that has Administrator privileges. During the

installation, when prompted to specify the user account to run the iServer service, specify the Power User account.

For more information about configuring a Power User and iServer account and log on as a service privilege, see "Creating an account with Windows administrator privileges," in Chapter 2, "Installing BIRT iServer."

## Backing up iServer system and Encyclopedia volume metadata

When upgrading iServer to Release 11, be sure to create a backup of the earlier Encyclopedia volume before performing the upgrade operation. In Release 11, there is no automatic rollback capability during an upgrade. In the event of a failure, the administrator must uninstall the new version of iServer, reinstall the previous version, and use the backup to restore the Encyclopedia volume to its previous state if a rollback becomes necessary.

The third-party database schemas that contain iServer system and Encyclopedia volume metadata are critical components of BIRT iServer System. To guard against data loss, the database administrator must back up the Encyclopedia volume schemas using the tools and resources of the third-party database system. It is necessary to back up all Encyclopedia volume metadata and file data to ensure the recoverability of the volume in the event of failure.

In Release 11, it is not necessary to back up the iServer system schema, although future versions may require this operation to protect critical system metadata. The administrator can restore a corrupted or missing system schema using the System Data Store Administrator utility. For more information on this utility, see "Specifying System Data Store Administrator properties," later in this chapter.

An iServer system administrator must take all necessary precautions to ensure that the schemas are properly backed up to safeguard the metadata. Please consult Actuate Support at the time of installation if you have any questions about these backup procedures to protect against the possibility of catastrophic failure. For information on the recommended procedures to back up an iServer system and Encyclopedia volume schemas in the Release 11 environment, refer to Chapter 10, "Backing up an Encyclopedia volume," later in this book.

When installing BIRT iServer, be sure to run the same versions of all products. Upgrade all products at the same time to maintain consistency in the versions you run.

To upgrade an iServer earlier than Release 8 Service Pack 1, you must first migrate to Release 8 Service Pack 1, 9, or 10, then upgrade to Release 11.

If you are a purchasing customer, you can download iServer from an Actuate ftp site or install from a product DVD. If you are evaluating BIRT iServer, you can download iServer from BIRT Exchange at the following location:

http://www.birt-exchange.com

Actuate also supports the cloud deployment of BIRT iServer using a ready-tolaunch iServer image. For more information about this installation option, see Chapter 6, "Installing BIRT iServer in a cloud," later in this book. For information about the new Release 11 BIRT iServer System architecture, see Chapter 1, "Understanding Actuate BIRT iServer architecture," earlier in this book.

The following sections describe how to install BIRT iServer Release 11 as an upgrade using the available installation options.

## Performing an automatic in-place upgrade

In an automatic in-place upgrade from an earlier major release, such as Release 10 Service Pack 1, the installation program performs the following operations:

- Installs and initializes iServer and the OOTB PostgreSQL relational database management system (RDBMS).
- Creates the iserver user in the OOTB PostgreSQL RDBMS to access the system, initializing the iserver user password to the PostgreSQL superuser password.
- Updates the iServer configuration file, specifying the volume, database, and connection information for the default volume.

The automatic option also performs the following operations during installation:

- Creates the system and volume schemas, initializing these schemas with basic configuration information.
- Creates the iServer configuration file, specifying system, volume, and connection information for the default installation

Alternatively, iServer supports a manual, side-by-side upgrade to a new Release 11 iServer in a path separate from the earlier release. For more information, see "Performing a manual side-by-side migration," later in this chapter.

This installation program can encounter a problem overwriting a file linked with a running process. Be sure to stop the iServer service and the NobleNet Portmapper service before proceeding with the upgrade.

#### How to stop the Actuate iServer 10 service

1 Choose Start→Settings→Control Panel.

On Control Panel, choose Administrative Tools.

On Administrative Tools, choose Services.

**2** On Services, select Actuate iServer 10 service, as shown in Figure 4-1. Then, choose Stop the service.

Services							×
File Action View	File Action View Help						
	〕 В│ 😫 💷   → ■ ॥ ■>						
🆏 Services (Local)	තු Services (Local)						
	Actuate iServer 10	Name 🛆	Description	Status	Startup Type	Log On As	
		Actuate iServer 10	Actuate iServer	Started	Automatic	.\Administr	
	Stop the service	🆏 Alerter	Notifies selected		Disabled	Local Servi	
	Restart the service	🎪 Application Layer G	Provides suppor	Started	Manual	Local Servi	
		🏶 Application Manage	Provides softwar		Manual	Local System	
	Description:	🍓 ASP.NET State Ser	Provides suppor		Manual	Network S	
	Actuate (Server Enterprise Service	🆓 Automatic Updates	Enables the do	Started	Automatic	Local System	
		🆓 Background Intellige	Transfers files in	Started	Manual	Local System	
		🍓 ClipBook	Enables ClipBoo		Disabled	Local System	
		🍓 COM+ Event System	Supports Syste	Started	Manual	Local System	-
	Extended Standard	1786					

Figure 4-1Stopping the Actuate iServer 10 service

The service stops, as shown in Figure 4-2.

Services							×
File Action View	Help						
	〕 ₿   🕄 🖬   ▶ ■ 🗉 ■						
Services (Local)	🆏 Services (Local)						
	Actuate iServer 10	Name 🛆	Description	Status	Startup Type	Log On As	•
		Actuate iServer 10	Actuate iServer		Automatic	.\Administr	
	Start the service	🎭 Alerter	Notifies selected		Disabled	Local Servi	
		🏟 Application Layer G	Provides suppor	Started	Manual	Local Servi	
	Description:	🍓 Application Manage	Provides softwar		Manual	Local System	
	Actuate iServer Enterprise Service	🍓 ASP.NET State Ser	Provides suppor		Manual	Network S	
		🍓 Automatic Updates	Enables the do	Started	Automatic	Local System	
		🎭 Background Intellige	Transfers files in	Started	Manual	Local System	
		🍓 ClipBook	Enables ClipBoo		Disabled	Local System	
		🍓 COM+Event System	Supports Syste	Started	Manual	Local System	•
	Extended Standard						_

Figure 4-2 Viewing Services after BIRT iServer service stops

## How to shut down the NobleNet Portmapper

Stop NobleNet Portmapper by performing the following tasks:

- 1 Choose Start→Programs→Administrative Tools→Services.
- **2** In Services, select NobleNet Portmapper for TCP then choose Stop.

Alternatively, open a command prompt and run the following command:

net stop "NobleNet Portmapper for TCP

The following procedure describes step-by-step how to perform an automatic upgrade in place of an earlier major version of iServer to BIRT Release 11.

## How to perform an automatic in-place upgrade from an earlier major release to iServer Release 11

- 1 Although the install program saves these files during an upgrade, Actuate recommends that you make a backup copy of the following files before installing:
  - encyc directories from all nodes
  - acserverconfig.xml in the /etc directory
  - acpmdconfig.xml in the /etc directory
  - RSSE code and associated files if you use the Open Security option
- **2** If you downloaded iServer, run the ActuateBIRTiServer.exe file. If you have a DVD or ftp distribution, run setup.exe in the iServer directory. The welcome message appears, as shown in Figure 4-3. Choose Next.



Figure 4-3 Viewing the welcome message

**3** Read and accept the license agreement, as shown in Figure 4-4. Choose Next.



Figure 4-4 Viewing the license agreement

**4** The setup installs the prerequisite components that BIRT iServer requires, as shown in Figure 4-5. Choose Next.





**5** In Setup Type, perform the following tasks:

- 1 Select Typical setup type.
- 2 In Destination Folder, accept the default or choose a new destination folder for the Program and Data locations.

iServer uses the Program location to resolve the paths to all the binaries that it launches. The environment variable, AC\_SERVER\_HOME, points to the location of the iServer binaries. The default path for the program location is C:/Program Files/Actuate11SP3/iServer.

iServer uses the Data location to store the iServer logs, iServer Encyclopedia, including the PostgreSQL data, and all other run-time data. The environment variable, AC\_DATA\_HOME, points to the location of the iServer data. The default path for the data location is C:/Actuate/iServer /data.

- 3 Select Upgrade Existing iServer and Migrate the Encyclopedia Data.
- 4 Check that the default directory in Existing iServer Location matches the location of the old files that you are upgrading, as shown in Figure 4-6. Choose Next.



Figure 4-6 Choosing to upgrade iServer and migrate the Encyclopedia

**6** A message appears stating that the install program is migrating a previous version of the Encyclopedia volume, as shown in Figure 4-7. Choose OK.

Actuate i	Server - InstallShield Wizard X
Ū,	Migrating the Encyclopedia from previous version might take some time. Please be patient.
	OK

Figure 4-7 Confirming volume migration

If you have not shut down the iServer service, a prompt appears, instructing you to shut down the service, as shown in Figure 4-8. Perform the following tasks:

- 1 Choose OK on the prompt shown in Figure 4-8.
- 2 Shut down the Actuate iServer service.
- **3** On Setup Type, choose Next.

Actuate i	Server - InstallShield Wizard
Ū,	To proceed with installation, BIRT iServer 10 needs to be shut down.
	OK



Choosing OK to shut down the iServer service

7 On Encyclopedia Metadata Storage, accept the default database, Bundled PostgreSQL. In System Name, type a name for the BIRT iServer System name, as shown in Figure 4-9. iServer inserts this name into the Encyclopedia volume schema and the iServer system schema names. Choose Next.



Figure 4-9 Accepting metadata database type

- **8** On PostgreSQL Database Information, in Database Credentials, type and confirm a password, as shown in Figure 4-10. iServer creates the following accounts automatically, using this password for each account:
  - postgres

The PostgreSQL database superuser The database superuser administers the PostgreSQL relational database management system (RDBMS).

ac\_<BIRT iServer System name>\_system

The System schema owner. iServer creates the iServer system schema and gives it this name.

ac\_<BIRT iServer System name>

The Encyclopedia schema owner. iServer creates the Encyclopedia volume schema and gives it this name.

In PostgreSQL Database Connection Information, accept the default port 8432 or type a new port number. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setu PostgreSQL Database Inforr The PostgreSQL RDBMS will be	nation nstaled to store the Gerver data.
Actuate	BIRT Genere uses the PostgreSQL RDBMS to store configuration information and Encyclopedia volume metadata.         PostgreSQL will be installed and configuration for you with the following accounts:         Superuse:       Designed a charge state sta
InstallShield	< Back Next> Cancel

Figure 4-10 Specifying PostgreSQL database information

If prompted to add Log on as a service privilege, choose Yes, as shown in Figure 4-11.



Figure 4-11 Setting the Windows local security policy

**9** Choose Yes to update your license, as shown in Figure 4-12.





**10** In License File Details, browse to and choose the license file, as shown in Figure 4-13. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setur	)	×
License File Details Please specify the license file.		
۵.	Specify the license file.	
Č	Try out the product using the included evaluation software license.	
$\Box$	9 Use the license you have purchased.	
ر الع ا	License file: C:\Product_licenses\Actuate\acserverlicense.xm Browse	
at		
<b>V</b>		
InstallShield	< Back Next > Cano	el

Figure 4-13 Specifying the license file

If installing using a named user license, a prompt appears advising you to check that the volume does not exceed the number of registered users authorized by the license, as shown in Figure 4-14. Choose Yes to continue, then choose Next.



Figure 4-14 Viewing the named user license question

**11** In Locale Information, choose Next to accept the default language and time zone, as shown in Figure 4-15. Alternatively, choose the language and locale settings for your region.

**12** In Specify Profiles, type the user name and password for the account used to start the Actuate BIRT iServer 11 service. The account must be a member of the Administrators group. Actuate recommends that you limit access to this account for security reasons.

If you are installing on Windows 2003, specify a user account that is in the Power Users not the Administrators group. A user account in the Administrators group cannot start the Actuate 11 BIRT iServer service.

Accept Automatically start the Actuate BIRT iServer 11 service when Windows boots, as shown in Figure 4-16. If you deselect this option, you must start the service manually from Windows Services. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setu	p	x
Locale Information Please specify default locale inf	iomation.	
้อม	Specify the language and time zone for the iServer. This will be the default for all users.	
Š	Language: <u>English (United States)</u>	•
Actuate	Time zone: America/Los_Angeles (America/Los_Angeles)	
InstallShield	<back next=""> Ca</back>	ancel

Figure 4-15 Specifying locale information

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup		×
Specify Profiles		
Please specify account informati	on. Server runs as a service on Windows. Specify the account information to use. Important Note: If you are installing on Windows 2003, please select a windows user account that is in the Power User NOT the administrator group. The Server Encyclopedia service won't start with an account in the administrator group. User name: Administrator Password: Confirm password:	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

Figure 4-16 Specifying the account for running the iServer service

**13** In System Configuration Password, type a password for Configuration Console, as shown in Figure 4-17. For both Configuration Console and Management Console, the default user name is Administrator. The Administrator account for Management Console has no password initially. You can log in to these consoles and change the password settings after installing iServer. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setu	p 🔀
System Configuration Passe Specify the system configurat	vord ion password.
لله ا	Specify the password you want to use for the iServer Configuration Console. This password is only for the Configuration Console.
Č	Password:
ate	Confirm password:
tt l	Note: The default username and password for iServer Management Console is:
Ac	User name: Administrator Password: (no password)
InstallShield	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel

Figure 4-17Specifying the password for using Configuration Console

14 In Start Copying Files, review the settings shown in Figure 4-18. Choose Next.



Figure 4-18 Reviewing settings before copying files

Setup Status displays an indicator showing how the installation is progressing, as shown in Figure 4-19.



## Figure 4-19 Viewing setup status

During installation, a command prompt appears, displaying the run-time commands and messages from the initialization process of the PostgreSQL database system, as shown in Figure 4-20.



Figure 4-20 Initializing the PostgreSQL database system

A prompt appears, asking whether to install pgAdmin, the administration tool for the PostgreSQL RDBMS, as shown in Figure 4-21. If you do not have pgAdmin installed, choose Yes.

Question	
?	PgAdmin is a graphical user interface administration tool for PostgreSQL database. It is also available from http://www.pgadmin.org. The version we include is pgAdmin v1.10. Do you want to install $\frac{1}{2}$ ?
	Click Yes to install it now or No to install it later.
	Yes No

Figure 4-21 Choosing to install the pgAdmin tool

Actuate BIRT iServer Setup appears with pgAdmin III Setup appearing immediately afterward, as shown in Figure 4-22.



Figure 4-22 Viewing Actuate BIRT iServer and pgAdmin III Setup

**15** In pgAdmin III Setup, perform the following tasks:

1 In Welcome, shown in Figure 4-23, choose Next.


Figure 4-23 Viewing Welcome

2 In License Agreement, select I accept the terms in the License Agreement, as shown in Figure 4-24. Choose Next.

jagAdmin III 1.10 Setup	
End-User License Agreement Please read the following license agreement carefully	$\mathbb{V}$
	2
pgAdmin III	
Copyright (c) 2002 - 2009, The pgAdmin Development Team	
Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose, without fee, and without a written agreement — is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this paragraph and the following two paragraphs appear in all copies.	
IN NO EVENT SHALL THE PGADMIN DEVELOPMENT TEAM BE LIABLE TO ANY PARTY FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSECUENTIAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING LOST PROFITS, APISING OUT	·
☑ I accept the terms in the License Agreement	
Print Back Next Cancel	

Figure 4-24 Accepting the license agreement

**3** In Custom Setup, review the features to be installed, as shown inFigure 4-25. Choose Next.

🛃 pgAdmin III 1.10 Setup	<u>_   X</u>
Custom Setup Select the way you want features to be installed.	VQ Y
Click the icons in the tree below to change the way	features will be installed.
pgAdmin III - PostgreSQL Tools     pgAdmin III - PostgreSQL Utilitie      Thernationalisation	Management and administration tools for the PostgreSQL DBMS
	This feature requires OKB on your hard drive. It has 2 of 2 subfeatures selected. The subfeatures require 25MB on your hard drive.
Location: C:\Program Files\pgAdmin III\	Browse
Reset Disk Usage Ba	ck Next Cancel

Figure 4-25 Viewing the features to be installed

4 In Ready to Install pgAdmin III, shown in Figure 4-26, choose Install.





Installing pgAdmin III appears, as shown in Figure 4-27.

pgAdmin III 1.10 Setup	
Installing pgAdmin III 1.10	VQ Y
Please wait while the Setup Wizard installs pgAdmin III 1.10.	
Status:	
Back Next	Cancel

Figure 4-27 Installing pgAdmin III

**5** When Completed, the pgAdmin III Setup Wizard appears, as shown in Figure 4-28, choose Finish to exit the pgAdmin III Setup Wizard.

📴 pgAdmin III 1.10 Setup	
	Completed the pgAdmin III 1.10 Setup Wizard
	Click the Finish button to exit the Setup Wizard.
G	
	Back <b>Finish</b> Cancel

Figure 4-28 Choosing Finish

**16** When the Actuate BIRT iServer 11 setup success message appears, as shown in Figure 4-29, choose Finish to exit this wizard.



Figure 4-29 Exiting the installation wizard

**17** The installation program prompts you to install the online help and manuals using the Actuate Localization and Online Documentation media, as shown in Figure 4-30.

Actuate i	Server - InstallShield Wizard
Ū,	This product accesses online help from the recommended location, http://www.actuate.com. To install the online help and manuals in PDF format on your local system, use the "Actuate Localization and Online Documentation" installation media.
	OK.

Figure 4-30 Viewing the install online help and manuals prompt

The installation program installs shortcuts on the desktop, as shown in Figure 4-31.





These shortcuts provide access to the following iServer components:

- iServer Management Console
   Launches Management Console to set up user accounts and run reports.
- iServer 11

Opens Welcome to Actuate iServer from which you can log in to Information Console to perform tasks, such as accessing folders and viewing reports. Configuration Console Log In appears, as shown in Figure 4-32. iServer is ready for use.

User name:	Administrator	
Password:		
Language:	English (United States)	-
Time zone:	America/Los_Angeles	•
	Log In	

Figure 4-32 Configuration Console Log In appears

## About the acserverconfig.xml files saved by the upgrade process

Figure 4-33 shows the date-stamped acserverconfig.xml files saved during an upgrade from iServer Release 10 to Release 11SP3. Figure 4-33 also shows the following changes in the file structure from an upgrade to an earlier iServer Release 11 version:

- The location of acserverconfig.xml is AC\_DATA\_HOME/config/11SP3 instead of AC\_DATA\_HOME/config.
- The upgrade to Release 11SP3 installs iServer into a new folder, \Program Files\Actuate11SP3\iServer. This is the Release 11SP3 AC\_SERVER\_HOME. An upgrade to a previous iServer Release 11 version from an earlier major release installed iServer in the earlier major release AC\_SERVER\_HOME.



Figure 4-33 Viewing the file system after upgrade to Release 11SP3

# Accessing the PostgreSQL Database Server using the pgAdmin utility

After migrating the Encyclopedia volume to Release 11, you can optionally open the pgAdmin III utility and access the PostgreSQL Database Server to browse the Encyclopedia volume database. Actuate does not support modifying the BIRT iServer PostgreSQL Database schema. Any changes to the schema made by the customer, such as the addition of an index on a table, must be recreated again manually in any future upgrade. For more information about using the pgAdmin III utility to access the PostgreSQL Database Server to browse the Encyclopedia volume database, see "Accessing the PostgreSQL Database Server using the pgAdmin utility," in Chapter 2, "Installing BIRT iServer."

The BIRT iServer uninstall process can optionally remove the iServer installation directory containing the encyc folder, which by default contains the postgres database directory. The uninstall process does not uninstall the pgAdmin III administration tool, a PostgreSQL database not residing in the AC\_DATA\_HOME/encyc directory, or another third-party database used to store the Encyclopedia volume data. You must uninstall these components separately.

# Performing an in-place upgrade from an earlier version of iServer Release 11

When upgrading BIRT iServer from an earlier Release 11 version, you install the new iServer version in the same directory as the earlier version. After completing the install procedure, you run a utility that updates the volume schema, enabling the new iServer version to work with your existing Encyclopedia volume or volumes. You must have write access to the current working directory where you run the utility since the process creates a local temporary file. Then, you bring the volume or volume or volumes online.

This installation program can encounter a problem overwriting a file linked with a running process. You must shut down the following services in order, before performing the in-place upgrade from an earlier Release 11 version:

- Actuate 11 BIRT iServer service
- Actuate 11 PostgreSQL for BIRT service
- NobleNet Portmapper service

#### How to stop the Actuate 11 BIRT iServer service

1 Choose Start→Settings→Control Panel.

On Control Panel, choose Administrative Tools.

On Administrative Tools, choose Services.

**2** On Services, select Actuate 11 BIRT iServer Service, as shown in Figure 4-34. Then, choose Stop the service.



Figure 4-34 Stopping the BIRT iServer service

The service stops, as shown in Figure 4-35.

Services							×
File Action View	Help						
	〕						
🎭 Services (Local)	Services (Local)						
	Actuate 11 BIRT iServer	Name 🛆	Description	Status	Startup Ty	Log On As	
		Actuate 11 BIRT iServer	Actuate BIRT		Automatic	.\Administr	
	Start the service	🍓 Actuate 11 PostgreSQL	PostgreSQL f	Started	Automatic	.VAdministr	
		🍓 Alerter	Notifies selec		Disabled	Local Servi	
	Description:	🍓 Application Layer Gate	Provides sup	Started	Manual	Local Servi	
	Actuate BIRT iServer Enterprise Service	🍓 Application Management	Provides soft		Manual	Local System	
		🖓 ASP.NET State Service	Provides sup		Manual	Network S	
		🍓 Automatic Updates	Enables the d	Started	Automatic	Local System	
		🍓 Background Intelligent	Transfers files		Manual	Local System	
		🍓 ClipBook	Enables ClipB		Disabled	Local System	<b>v</b>
	Extended Standard /						_
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·						-

Figure 4-35 Viewing Services after BIRT iServer service stops

#### How to shut down the Actuate 11 PostgreSQL for BIRT service

**1** Choose Start→Programs→Administrative Tools→Services.

On Control Panel, choose Administrative Tools.

On Administrative Tools, choose Services.

**2** On Services, select Actuate 11 PostgreSQL for BIRT Service, as shown in Figure 4-36.

Services							×
File Action View	Help						
	) 🖪 😰 💷 🕨 🔳 💵 🚥						
Services (Local)	🍇 Services (Local)	_					
	Actuate 11 PostgreSQL for BIBT	Name A	Description	Status	Startup Type	Log On As	
	iServer	Actuate 11 BIRT iServer	Actuate BIRT		Automatic	.\Administr	
		Actuate 11 PostgreSQL	PostgreSQL f			.\Administr	
	Stop the service	🍓 Alerter	Notifies select		Disabled	Local Servi	
	Restart the service	🍓 Application Layer Gate	Provides supp	Started	Manual	Local Servi	
		🆓 Application Management	Provides soft		Manual	Local System	
	Description:	🍓 ASP.NET State Service	Provides supp		Manual	Network S	
	PostgreSQL for Actuate BIRT iServer 11	🆓 Automatic Updates	Enables the d	Started	Automatic	Local System	
		🍓 Background Intelligent	Transfers files	Started	Manual	Local System	
		🎭 ClipBook	Enables ClipB		Disabled	Local System	•
	Extended Standard						



The service stops, as shown in Figure 4-37.

Services							×
File Action View	Help						
	〕						
Services (Local)	Services (Local)						
	Actuate 11 PostgreSQL for BIRT	Name /	Description	Status	Startup Type	Log On As	
	iServer	🍓 Actuate 11 BIRT iServer	Actuate BIRT		Automatic	.\Administr	
		🆓 Actuate 11 PostgreSQL	PostgreSQL f		Automatic	.\Administr	
	Start the service	🆓 Alerter	Notifies select		Disabled	Local Servi	
		Application Layer Gate	Provides supp	Started	Manual	Local Servi	
	Description:	🆓 Application Management	Provides soft		Manual	Local System	
	PostgreSUL for Actuate BIRT (Server 11	ASP.NET State Service	Provides supp		Manual	Network S	
		🍓 Automatic Updates	Enables the d	Started	Automatic	Local System	
		🍓 Background Intelligent	Transfers files	Started	Manual	Local System	
		🆓 ClipBook	Enables ClipB		Disabled	Local System	•
	Extended Standard						_

Figure 4-37 Viewing Services after PostgreSQL service stopped

#### How to shut down the NobleNet Portmapper

Stop NobleNet Portmapper by performing the following tasks:

- 1 Choose Start-> Programs-> Administrative Tools-> Services.
- **2** In Services, select NobleNet Portmapper for TCP then choose Stop.

Alternatively, open a command prompt and run the following command:

net stop "NobleNet Portmapper for TCP

#### How to perform an in-place upgrade from an earlier Release 11 installation

- 1 Although the install program saves these files during an upgrade, Actuate recommends that you make a backup copy of the following files before installing:
  - encyc directories from all nodes
  - acserverconfig.xml in the AC\_DATA\_HOME/config directory
  - acpmdconfig.xml in the AC\_SERVER\_HOME/etc directory
  - RSSE code and associated files if you use the Open Security option
- **2** If you downloaded iServer, run the ActuateBIRTiServer.exe file. If you have a DVD or ftp distribution, run setup.exe in the iServer directory. The welcome message appears, as shown in Figure 4-38. Choose Next.





**3** Read and accept the license agreement, as shown in Figure 4-39. Choose Next.



Figure 4-39 Viewing the license agreement

**4** The setup installs the prerequisite components that BIRT iServer requires, as shown in Figure 4-40. Choose Next.



Figure 4-40 Installing Prerequisites

- **5** In Setup Type, perform the following tasks:
  - 1 Select Typical setup type.
  - 2 In Destination Folder, accept the default or choose a new destination folder for the Program and Data locations.

iServer uses the Program location to resolve the paths to all the binaries that it launches. The environment variable, AC\_SERVER\_HOME, points to the location of the iServer binaries. The default path for the program location is C:/Program Files/Actuate11SP3/iServer.

iServer uses the Data location to store the iServer logs, iServer Encyclopedia, including the PostgreSQL data, and all other run-time data. The environment variable, AC\_DATA\_HOME, points to the location of the iServer data. The default path for the data location is C:/Actuate/iServer /data. Choose Next.

The installer detects the previous Release 11 installation and selects Upgrade Existing iServer and Migrate the Encyclopedia Data, as shown in Figure 4-41.



Figure 4-41 Choosing setup type

A message appears stating that the install program is migrating a previous version of the Encyclopedia volume, as shown in Figure 4-42. Choose OK.

Act	uate i	Server - InstallShield Wizard
	į)	Migrating the Encyclopedia from previous version might take some time. Please be patient.
		ОК

Figure 4-42 Confirming volume migration

If you have not shut down the BIRT iServer service, a prompt appears, instructing you to shut down the service, as shown in Figure 4-43. Perform the following tasks:

- 1 Choose OK on the prompt shown in Figure 4-43.
- 2 Stop the Actuate 11 BIRT iServer service. If you have not also stopped the PostgreSQL for Actuate BIRT iServer 11 service, stop this service too.
- 3 On Setup Type, choose Next.



Figure 4-43 Choosing OK to shut down iServer

- **6** If you have not stopped the PostgreSQL for Actuate BIRT iServer 11 service, a prompt appears, instructing you to shut down the service, as shown in Figure 4-44 . Perform the following tasks:
  - 1 Choose OK on the prompt shown in Figure 4-44.
  - 2 Stop the Actuate 11 PostgreSQL for BIRT iServer service.
  - **3** On Setup Type, choose Next.



Figure 4-44 Choosing OK to shut down the PostgreSQL service

7 In Specify Profiles, type the user name and password for the account used to start the Actuate BIRT iServer 11 service. The account must be a member of the Administrators group. Actuate recommends that you limit access to this account for security reasons.

If you are installing on Windows 2003, specify a user account that is in the Power Users not the Administrators group. A user account in the Adminstrators group cannot start the Actuate 11 BIRT iServer service.

Accept Automatically start the Actuate BIRT iServer 11 service when Windows boots, as shown in Figure 4-45. If you deselect this option, you must start the service manually from Windows Services. Choose Next.



Figure 4-45Specifying the account for running the iServer service

8 In System Configuration Password, type a password for Configuration Console, as shown in Figure 4-46. For both Configuration Console and Management Console, the default user name is Administrator. The Administrator account for Management Console has no password initially. You can log in to these consoles and change the password settings after installing iServer. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setu	p X
System Configuration Passy Specify the system configurat	rord ion password
<u>ل</u> ل	Specify the password you want to use for the iServer Configuration Console. This password is only for the Configuration Console.
Č	Password:
ate	Confirm password:
tt.	Note: The default username and password for iServer Management Console is:
Ac	User name: Administrator Password: (no password)
InstallShield	< Back Next> Cancel

 Figure 4-46
 Specifying the password for using Configuration Console

**9** In Start Copying Files, review the settings shown in Figure 4-47. Choose Next



**Figure 4-47** Reviewing settings before copying files

Setup Status displays an indicator showing how the installation is progressing, as shown in Figure 4-48.



Figure 4-48 Viewing setup status

A prompt appears, asking whether to install pgAdmin, the administration tool for the PostgreSQL RDBMS, as shown in Figure 4-49. If you do not have pgAdmin installed, choose Yes.

Question	X
?	PgAdmin is a graphical user interface administration tool for PostgreSQL database. It is also available from http://www.pgadmin.org. The version we include is pgAdmin v1.10. Do you want to install k?
	Click Yes to install it now or No to install it later.
	Yes No

Figure 4-49 Choosing to install the pgAdmin tool

Actuate BIRT iServer Setup appears with pgAdmin III Setup appearing immediately afterward, as shown in Figure 4-50.





**10** In pgAdmin III Setup, perform the following tasks:

1 In Welcome, shown in Figure 4-51, choose Next.



Figure 4-51 Viewing Welcome

2 In License Agreement, select I accept the terms in the License Agreement, as shown in Figure 4-52. Choose Next.



Figure 4-52 Accepting the license agreement

3 In Custom Setup, review the features to be installed, as shown inFigure 4-53. Choose Next.

🛃 pgAdmin III 1.10 Setup	
Custom Setup	h h d/
Select the way you want features to be installed.	VS K
Click the icons in the tree below to change the way	features will be installed.
pgAdmin III - PostgreSQL Tools     pgAdmin III     pgAdmin III	Management and administration tools for the PostgreSQL DBMS
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	This feature requires OKB on your hard drive. It has 2 of 2 subfeatures selected. The subfeatures require 25MB on your hard drive.
Location: C:\Program Files\pgAdmin III\	Browse
Reset Disk Usage Ba	ck Next Cancel

Figure 4-53 Viewing the features to be installed

4 In Ready to Install pgAdmin III, shown in Figure 4-54, choose Install.





Installing pgAdmin III appears, as shown in Figure 4-55.

🛃 pgAdmin III 1.10 Setup		. 🗆 🗵
Installing pgAdmin III 1.10	Q	¥
Please wait while the Setup Wizard installs pgAdmin III 1.10.		
Status:		
Back Next	Cano	el



**5** When Completed, the pgAdmin III Setup Wizard appears, as shown in Figure 4-56, choose Finish to exit the pgAdmin III Setup Wizard.



Figure 4-56 Choosing Finish

**11** When the Actuate BIRT iServer 11 setup success message appears, as shown in Figure 4-57, choose Finish to exit this wizard.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup	
Actuate DPC	The setup wizard successfully installed Actuate BIRT iServer. Choose Finish to exit the wizard.
InstallShield	< Back Finish Cancel

Figure 4-57 Exiting the installation wizard

**12** The installation program prompts you to install the online help and manuals using the Actuate Localization and Online Documentation media, as shown in Figure 4-58.

Actuate i	Server - InstallShield Wizard
(j)	This product accesses online help from the recommended location, http://www.actuate.com. To install the online help and manuals in PDF format on your local system, use the "Actuate Localization and Online Documentation" installation media.
	OK.

Figure 4-58 Viewing the install online help and manuals prompt

The installation program installs shortcuts on the desktop, as shown in Figure 4-59.



Figure 4-59 iServer shortcuts installed on the desktop

These shortcuts provide access to the following iServer components:

- iServer Management Console
   Launches Management Console to set up user accounts and run reports.
- iServer 11

Opens Welcome to Actuate iServer from which you can log in to Information Console to perform tasks, such as accessing folders and viewing reports.

Configuration Console Log In appears, as shown in Figure 4-60. iServer is ready for use.

User name:	Administrator	
Password:		
Language:	English (United States)	
Time zone:	America/Los_Angeles	
	Log In	

Figure 4-60

Configuration Console Log In appears

### Performing a manual side-by-side upgrade

In a manual side-by-side upgrade, the administrator installs a new Release 11 iServer in a path separate from an earlier major release. The installation program performs the following operations using a PostgreSQL relational database management system (RDBMS) as the example:

- Installs and initializes iServer and the PostgreSQL relational database management system (RDBMS).
- Creates the iserver user in the PostgreSQL RDBMS to access the system, initializing the iserver user password to the PostgreSQL superuser password.

- Creates the system and volume schema, initializing these schema with basic configuration information.
- Creates the iServer configuration file, specifying system, volume, and connection information for the default installation

This manual option requires the system administrator to export the volume metadata and data from the earlier iServer volume to a temporary workspace, then import these resources into the new Release 11 installation. Actuate provides the Squirrel Data Exporter and Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator utilities to perform these tasks.

The following procedure describes how to perform a manual side-by-side upgrade of an earlier iServer version to BIRT iServer Release 11.

#### How to perform a manual side-by-side upgrade to iServer Release 11

1 If you downloaded iServer, run the ActuateBIRTiServer.exe file. If you have a DVD or ftp distribution, run setup.exe in the iServer directory. The welcome message appears, as shown in Figure 4-61. Choose Next.



Figure 4-61Viewing the welcome message

**2** Read and accept the license agreement, as shown in Figure 4-62. Choose Next.



Figure 4-62 Viewing the license agreement

**3** The setup installs the prerequisite components that BIRT iServer requires, as shown in Figure 4-63. Choose Next.



Figure 4-63 Installing Prerequisites

**4** In Setup Type, select Custom, as shown in Figure 4-64, to install a supported relational database management system (RDBMS) for the Encyclopedia

volume, such as Oracle or PostgreSQL. In Destination Folder, accept the default or choose a new destination folder for the Program and Data locations.

iServer uses the program location to resolve the paths to all the binaries that it launches. The environment variable, AC\_SERVER\_HOME, points to the location of the iServer program files. The default path for the program location is C:\Program Files\Actuate11SP3\iServer.

iServer uses the Data location to store the iServer logs, iServer Encyclopedia, including the PostgreSQL data, and all other run-time data. The environment variable, AC\_DATA\_HOME, points to the location of the iServer data. The default path for the data location is C:/Actuate/iServer/data.

Do not select Upgrade Existing iServer and Migrate the Encyclopedia Data. After running the install wizard, you use the Squirrel Data Exporter and Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator utilities to manually migrate the Encyclopedia volume or volumes from the previous iServer release.



After reviewing this information, choose Next.

Figure 4-64 Selecting custom setup type

**5** In Select Features, accept the default, all features selected, as shown in Figure 4-65. The installation program installs all features. Choose Next.



Figure 4-65 Selecting features to install

- **6** In iServer Installation Option, accept the default, Stand-alone, to install iServer as a stand-alone server, as shown in Figure 4-66. Choose Next.
- 7 In Encyclopedia Metadata Storage, select the type of Encyclopedia volume metadata database to install, as shown in Figure 4-67. This installation example demonstrates installing the bundled PostgreSQL database. In System Name, type a name for the BIRT iServer System name. iServer inserts this name into the names of the Encyclopedia volume schema and the iServer system schema. Choose Next.





Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup		
Encyclopedia Metadata Storage and System Name Choose the location to store Encyclopedia metadata and specify the system name.		
	BIRT iServer uses a database to store metadata and manage files in the Encyclopedia.	
	Bundled PostgreSQL (This will be installed and configured for you.)	
	9 Oracle	
ੂਦ /	<ul> <li>PostgreSQL</li> <li>SQL Server</li> </ul>	
na	iServer System Name Please specify a BIRT iServer System name,	
Act	System Name: corp	
InstallShield	< <u>B</u> ack Next > Cancel	]

Figure 4-67 Selecting metadata database type

**8** On PostgreSQL Database Information, in Database Credentials, type and confirm a password, as shown in Figure 4-68. iServer creates the following accounts automatically, using this password for each account:

postgres

The PostgreSQL database superuser The database superuser administers the PostgreSQL relational database management system (RDBMS).

ac\_<BIRT iServer System name>\_system

The System schema owner. iServer creates the iServer system schema and gives it this name.

ac\_<BIRT iServer System name>

The Encyclopedia schema owner. iServer creates the Encyclopedia volume schema and gives it this name.

In PostgreSQL Database Connection Information, accept the default port 8432 or type a new port number. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup		×
PostgreSQL Database Infor The PostgreSQL RDBMS will be	mation installed to store the iServer data.	
Actuate De	BIRT Server uses the PostgreSQL RDBMS to store configuration information and Encyclopedia volume metadata.         PostgreSQL will be installed and configured for you with the following accounts: Superviser, postgres         Systems: postgres         System schema owner: ac_corp_system         Encyclopedia schema owner: ac_corp         Plases posity the password you want to assign to these accounts, and the port to use for PostgreSQL         Database Credentials         Password:         Database Connection Information         Port:       8432	
InstallShield	< Back Next> Cancel	

Figure 4-68 Specifying PostgreSQL database information

If prompted to add Log on as a service privilege, choose Yes, as shown in Figure 4-69.

Attention	×
?	The user specified does not have ""Log On As A Service"" privilege. The Actuate service cannot start as this user account without this privilege. Do you want to grant this privilege to this user?
	Yes No

Figure 4-69

Setting the Windows local security policy

**9** In License File Details, select Use the license that you purchased. Choose Browse, then navigate to and choose the license file, as shown in Figure 4-70.

Alternatively, choose Try out the product using the included evaluation software license if you do not have a purchased license. Choose Next.



Figure 4-70 Specifying the license file

When installing using a named-user license, a prompt appears advising you to check that the volume does not exceed the number of registered users authorized by the license, as shown in Figure 4-71.

Question	×
?	You are using a Named User License. Please make sure that the internal or external Encyclopedia volume does not exceed the number of registered users authorized by the license. Please contact the Actuate Customer Support Center or licensing@actuate.com for further assistance.
	Click Yes to continue or No to abort the installation.
	Yes No

Figure 4-71 Viewing the named-user license question

Choose Yes to continue the installation.

**10** In Locale Information, choose Next to accept the default language and time zone, as shown in Figure 4-72. Alternatively, choose the language and locale settings for your region.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setu	p	X
Locale Information Please specify default locale in	formation.	
้อม	Specify the language and time zone for the iServer. This will be the default for all users.	
Č	Language: <u>English (United States)</u>	
Actuate	Time zone: America/Los_Angeles (America/Los_Angeles)	
InstallShield	< Back Next > Car	ncel

Figure 4-72 Specifying locale information

**11** In Specify Profiles, type the user name, password, and confirm the password for the account used to start the Actuate iServer 11 service, as shown in Figure 4-73. The account must be a member of the Administrators group. Actuate recommends that you limit access to this account for security reasons.

If you are installing on Windows 2003, specify a user account that is in the Power Users not the Administrators group. A user account in the Administrators group cannot start the Actuate 11 BIRT iServer service.

Accept Automatically start the Actuate BIRT iServer 11 service when Windows boots, as shown in Figure 4-73. If you deselect this option, you must start the service manually from Windows Services. Choose Next.



Figure 4-73 Specifying the account for running the iServer service

**12** In iServer Configuration, accept the default values. Alternatively, specify the host names and port numbers where the PMD and iServer bind to listen for requests, as shown in Figure 4-74. Choose Next.

Actuate RIBT (Server 11 Setu	n	X
iServer Configuration	P	
Please specify configuration fo	r Server and Process Management Daemon	
r loade openly configuration to		
Actuate	PMD Configuration         Enter the host name and port number that PMD should bind to listen for requests.         Host name/IP address:       urup         Port number:       \$051         Server Configuration       Enter the host name and port number that (Server should bind to listen for requests.         Host name/IP address:       urup         Port number:       \$050         Port number:       \$050	
InstallShield	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	cel

Figure 4-74 Specifying iServer configuration information

**13** In System Configuration Password, type and confirm a password for Configuration Console, as shown in Figure 4-75. For both Configuration

Console and Management Console, the default user name is Administrator. The Administrator account for Management Console has no initial password. You can log in to these consoles and change the password settings after installing iServer. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setu	p 🔀
System Configuration Passe Specify the system configural	<b>vord</b> ion password.
<u>ل</u> ل	Specify the password you want to use for the iServer Configuration Console. This password is only for the Configuration Console.
Ğ	Password:
ate	Corfirm password:
LT L	Note: The default username and password for iServer Management Console is:
Ac	User name: Administrator Password: (no password)
InstallShield	< Back Next > Cancel

Figure 4-75 Specifying the password for using Configuration Console

**14** In Volume Information, select Do not use the default volume, as shown in Figure 4-76. The installation process does not create the default Encyclopedia volume. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup	x
Volume Information Specify volume information.	
ία.	Do you want to create and use the default volume under C:Vactuate11VServer/vdata\encyc with this iServer?
Č	Use the default volume. Volume name: <a href="https://oorp.com/doi.org">doip.</a>
Actuate	Do not use the default volume.
InstallShield	< Back Next > Cancel

Figure 4-76 Selecting not to install the default volume

**15** In Management Console Configuration, accept the default Host name and port number values in PMD Configuration and iServer Configuration, as shown in Figure 4-77. Alternatively, specify different values. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setu	p	×
Management Console Config	puration	
Please specify configuration to	r iServer and Process Management Daemon.	
Actuate	PMD Configuration         Enter the host name and pot number that the Actuate Management Console should use to contact the PMD.         Host name/IP address:       urup         Pot number:       3051         Server Configuration       Enter the host name and pot number that the Actuate Management Console should use to contact the Server.         Host name/IP address:       urup         Pot number:       3051         Default volume name:       5050	
InstallShield	< <u>₿</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

Figure 4-77 Specifying Management Console properties

**16** In Actuate iServer Application Container, type the port number that the iServer Application Container uses, or accept the default port number, 8910, as shown in Figure 4-78. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setu	p X	
Actuate iServer Application Container		
Thease specily Actuate Iserver	Application Container Information.	
Je.	Specify the HTTP port that Actuate iServer Application Container should use.	
Actuate	Port number: 9310	
InstallShield	< <u>₿</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel	

Figure 4-78 Specifying the application container port number

**17** In Context Path, type the context path for Management Console or accept the default path, /acadmin, as shown in Figure 4-79. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setu	p
Context Path	
Please specify context path.	
Jer Ler	Specify the context path for Management Console.
Actuate	Context path: /acadmin
InstallShield	< Back Next > Cancel

Figure 4-79 Specifying the context path

**18** In Select Program Folder, specify a folder name containing the iServer icons that are used to launch the consoles, or accept the default name, Actuate 11, as shown in Figure 4-80. Choose Next.



Figure 4-80 Specifying a program folder

19 In Start Copying Files, review the settings shown in Figure 4-81. Choose Next.



Figure 4-81 Reviewing settings before copying files

Setup Status displays an indicator showing how the installation is progressing, as shown in Figure 4-82.



#### Figure 4-82 Viewing setup status

During installation, a command prompt appears, displaying the run-time commands and messages from the initialization process of the PostgreSQL RDBMS and Encyclopedia volume schema, as shown in Figure 4-83.



Figure 4-83 Initializing the PostgreSQL RDBMS

A prompt appears, asking if you want to install the pgAdmin database administration tool for the PostgreSQL RDBMS, as shown in Figure 4-84. Choose Yes.

Question	X
?	PgAdmin is a graphical user interface administration tool for PostgreSQL database. It is also available from http://www.pgadmin.org. The version we include is pgAdmin v1.10. Do you want to install it?
	Click Yes to install it now or No to install it later.
	Yes No

Figure 4-84 Choosing to install the pgAdmin tool

Actuate BIRT iServer Setup appears, then pgAdmin III Setup appears, as shown in Figure 4-85.



 Figure 4-85
 Viewing Actuate BIRT iServer and pgAdmin III Setup

**20** In pgAdmin III Setup, perform the following tasks:

1 In Welcome, shown in Figure 4-86, choose Next.


Figure 4-86 Viewing Welcome

2 In End-User License Agreement, select I accept the terms in the License Agreement, as shown in Figure 4-87. Choose Next.

📴 pgAdmin III 1.10 Setup	
End-User License Agreement	ha
Please read the following license agreement carefully	VY Y
pgAdmin III	-
Copyright (c) 2002 - 2009, The pgAdmin Development Team	
Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and documentation for any purpose, without fee, and without a written is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and th paragraph and the following two paragraphs appear in all copies	l its n agreement ils s.
IN NO EVENT SHALL THE PGADMIN DEVELOPMENT TEAM BE I ANY PARTY FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, O CONSECUENTIAL DAMAGES INCLUDING LOST PROFITS ARIS	
${\overline{\!$	
Print Back Next	Cancel

Figure 4-87 Accepting the license agreement

**3** In Custom Setup, review the features to be installed, as shown in Figure 4-88. Choose Next.

🛃 pgAdmin III 1.10 Setup	<u>_</u> _X
Custom Setup Select the way you want features to be installed.	VQ Y
Click the icons in the tree below to change the way	features will be installed.
	Management and administration tools for the PostgreSQL DBMS
× >	This feature requires OKB on your hard drive. It has 2 of 2 subfeatures selected. The subfeatures require 25MB on your hard drive.
Location: C:\Program Files\pgAdmin III\	Browse
Reset Disk Usage Ba	ck Next Cancel

Figure 4-88 Viewing the features to be installed

4 In Ready to Install pgAdmin III, shown in Figure 4-89, choose Install.





Installing pgAdmin III appears, as shown in Figure 4-90.

pgAdmin III 1.10 Setup	_ I X
Installing pgAdmin III 1.10	LQ Y
Please wait while the Setup Wizard installs pgAdmin III 1.10.	
Status:	
Back Next	Cancel



**5** When Completed the pgAdmin III Setup Wizard appears, as shown in Figure 4-91, choose Finish to exit the wizard.

🛃 pgAdmin III 1.10 Setup	
	Completed the pgAdmin III 1.10 Setup Wizard
	Click the Finish button to exit the Setup Wizard.
G}	
	Back <b>Finish</b> Cancel



**21** Choose Finish to exit the wizard, as shown in Figure 4-92.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup		
Actuate DPC	The setup wizard successfully installed Actuate BIRT (Server. Choose Finish to exit the wizard.	
InstallShield	Kack Finish Cancel	

Figure 4-92 Exiting the installation wizard

**22** The installation program prompts you to install the online help from the following location:

http://www.actuate.com

Alternatively, you can install the online help and manuals in PDF format using the Actuate Localization and Online Documentation media. Figure 4-93 shows the prompt.



Figure 4-93 Viewing the install online help and manuals prompt

The installation program installs shortcuts on the desktop, as shown in Figure 4-94.



Figure 4-94 Viewing BIRT iServer shortcuts on the desktop

These shortcuts provide access to the following iServer components:

iServer Management Console
 Launches Management Console to set up user accounts and run reports.

BIRT iServer 11

Opens Welcome to Actuate BIRT iServer from which you can log in to Information Console to perform tasks, such as accessing folders and viewing reports.

The following procedure describes step-by-step how to perform an automatic or manual upgrade in place of an earlier version of iServer to Actuate Release 11.

#### Performing a manual side-by-side migration

The following section describes how to perform a manual migration of a single Encyclopedia volume in a side-by-side installation. In a side-by-side installation, the administrator installs a new BIRT iServer Release 11 in a path separate from an earlier major release.

The administrator manually copies the contents of the old encyc directory, containing the Encyclopedia volume data, to a new BIRT iServer Release 11 Encyclopedia volume folder. Next, the administrator migrates the Encyclopedia volume schema and metadata from the earlier release to the new BIRT iServer Release 11 in two steps, using the Squirrel Data Exporter and Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator utilities. The administrator then creates a new volume in Configuration Console for the migrated volume.

Alternatively, iServer supports a manual upgrade to an Oracle RDBMS for storing Encyclopedia volume metadata. For more information on installing an iServer that uses an Oracle RDMBS, see "Installing an Encyclopedia volume that uses an alternative database," in Chapter 3, "Installing BIRT iServer using an alternative database."

The following procedure describes how to migrate an Encyclopedia volume to BIRT iServer Release 11 in a side-by-side installation.

#### How to perform a manual export of an Encyclopedia volume in a side-by-side installation

To migrate an Encyclopedia volume from an earlier major iServer release to BIRT iServer Release 11, you must first export this release to a staging area using the Squirrel Data Exporter utility. To export the earlier release, perform the following tasks:

1 When the install program completes, the Actuate iServer System Configuration Console Log in appears. The address bar contains the following web address:

#### http://localhost:8910/acadmin/config

8910 is the port number that the installer specified for the iServer Application Container to use if you installed with the previous release running in the environment, as shown in Figure 4-78. If you installed the new release with the previous release shut down, you may have to edit the port specified for the new iServer Application Container to manage potential port conflict if you want to run both releases simultaneously on the same machine.

- **2** Log into Configuration Console as Administrator.
- **3** When you migrate a volume from an earlier release to BIRT iServer Release 11 the install program creates a default partition. You must delete it. If you have already performed this step, skip to Step 4. Otherwise, perform the following tasks:
  - 1 Choose Advanced view.
  - 2 From the side menu, choose Partitions. On Partitions, point to the arrow next to DefaultPartition and choose Delete, as shown in Figure 4-95.

Contorn	Partitions	
System	Add Partition	
Servers	Name Status Volume	
- Sonor	DefaultPartition	
Configuration	Delete	
Tempiates		
Volumes		
Partitions		
Resource Groups		
Printers		
Figure 4-95	Deleting DefaultPartition	

- **4** Create a partition on BIRT iServer Release 11 for the volume that you are going to migrate from the previous iServer release. To create a new partition, perform the following tasks:
  - 1 In the operating system, create a folder for a new partition in AC\_DATA\_HOME, which points to the location of the iServer data specified during the BIRT iServer Release 11 installation.
  - 2 Log in to Configuration Console.
  - 3 Choose Advanced view.
  - 4 From the side menu, choose Partitions, then choose Add Partition.
  - **5** In Partition name, type the name of the earlier iServer release partition that specifies the path to the volume that you want to migrate. For example, if the name of the Encyclopedia volume partition on the earlier iServer release is ac\_corp\_partition, type that name in Partition name.
  - 6 In Partition Path, type the path to the iServer Release 11 Encyclopedia volume folder, as shown in Figure 4-96. This path does not need to match the partition path to the same volume on the earlier iServer release. Choose OK.

	Curtain	Partitions > Ac	d Partition		
12	system	Partition name:	ac_corp_partition	*	<b>^</b>
Ð	Servers	Template Name	Partition Path	_	
	Server Configuration	urup	C:Vactuate11\iServer\data\ac_corp_partition	*	
	Templates			-	
	Volumes	* These fields are	required and cannot be left blank		
	Partitions				
	Resource Groups				-
	Printers			_	
				OK	Cancel

Figure 4-96 Creating a partition for a migrated volume

- **5** Copy the file, filetype, and status folders from the old Encyclopedia volume folder to the iServer Release 11 Encyclopedia volume folder. For example, if you want to migrate the default volume from release 10SP1, the location of these folders is AC\_SERVER\_HOME/encyc. The default AC\_SERVER\_HOME path in release 10SP1 is /Program Files/Actuate10/iServer.
- **6** In this step, you create a new schema that you use to create a new volume. In the Advanced view of Configuration Console, from the side menu, choose Volumes.

On Volumes, point to the icon next to Default ActuatePostgreSQL MetadataDatabase and choose Add volume schema, as shown in Figure 4-97.



Figure 4-97 Choosing to add a new schema

On Volumes—New Schema, perform the following tasks:

1 In Schema name, type a name for the schema. Restrict the schema name to alphanumeric and underscore characters with an initial alphabetic character in the pattern [a-z][a-z 0-9]\*. Do not use a hyphen.

- 2 In Database schema name, type a name for the Database schema. The name must be less than 30 characters. Observe the same naming restrictions for this schema as the volume schema name.
- 3 In Database schema password, type a new password.
- 4 In Database schema password confirm, re-type the new password.
- **5** In Database superuser, type the database superuser name. For the PostgreSQL RDBMS that installs with iServer by default, the PostgreSQL superuser name is postgres.
- 6 In Database superuser password, type the superuser password. This password is the same password that the installer provides when installing iServer, as shown in Figure 4-68. Choose OK.

Volumes—New Schema appears as shown in Figure 4-98.

Volumes > New Volume Schem	ia	
Schema		
Metadata Database:	Default_ActuatePostgreSQL_MetadataDatabase	
Schema type:	Volume	
Schema name:	ac_corp	*
Database schema name:	ac_corp	*
Database schema password:	•••••	*
Database schema password confirm:	•••••	]
Please enter the database superuser o volume.	redentials to make changes to the database schema for the encyclo	pedial
Database superuser:	postgres	*
Database superuser password:	•••••	*
* These fields are required and cannot	be left blank	
	OK Cancel	Apply

#### Figure 4-98 Creating a new schema

The new schema appears in the list of schemas on Volumes, as shown in Figure 4-99.

Volumes			
	■ Act upon selected items	,	
🖶 Metadata Database	Schema	Type 📕 Volume Status Description	
≣▼ Default ActuatePostgreSQL Metadata	aDatabase ≡* <u>ac corp</u>	Volume	
	≣‴ <u>ac corp system</u>	System	
Legend			
Changes pending require volume restart to take effect			

Figure 4-99 Viewing the new schema

- 7 Shut down the earlier iServer release by performing the following tasks:
  - 1 Choose Start→Programs→<earlier iServer version>→iServer Configuration Console. Log in to Configuration Console as Administrator.
  - 2 Choose Advanced view.
  - **3** From the side menu, choose System. In System—Status, choose Stop to shut down iServer.

Make sure the earlier iServer is offline before performing the next operation, as shown in Figure 4-100.

System : Status		
System is currently offline		
	Madify Start Paramatara	Start system
	Mouny Start Parameters	Start System



**8** Add the following string to the PATH environment variable on your machine:

<AC\_SERVER\_HOME>\bin

In this instance, AC\_SERVER\_HOME refers to the release 11SP3 AC\_SERVER\_HOME. For example, using the default value for AC\_SERVER\_HOME, add:

C:\Program Files\Actuate11SP3\iServer\bin

- **9** Run the Squirrel Data Exporter by performing the following tasks:
  - 1 In Windows Explorer, navigate to release 11SP3 AC\_SERVER\_HOME\bin.
  - 2 Create a properties file named SquirrelDataExporter.properties. You pass this file to the Squirrel Data Exporter utility when you execute it. Use the following example to create SquirrelDataExporter.properties:

```
AC_SERVER_HOME = C:/Program Files/Actuate11SP3/iServer
SQUIRREL_DATA_HOME =
    C:/Program Files/Actuate10/iServer/ac_corp_partition
SQUIRREL_EXPORT_FOLDER = C:/Actuate11/SquirrelData/ac_corp
SQUIRREL_EXPORT_FORMAT = PostgreSQL
NEW_SCHEMA_NAME = ac_corp
NEW_VOLUME_NAME = corp
```

See Table 4-1 for descriptions of the required Squirrel Data Exporter properties. See Table 4-2 for descriptions of the optional Squirrel Data Exporter properties. See "Configuring Squirrel Data Exporter and System or Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator properties files" for additional notes on property files.

**10** Open a command prompt and navigate to release 11SP3 AC\_SERVER\_HOME /bin.

**11** Run the export\_squirrel\_data.bat file using the following command line syntax:

export\_squirrel\_data SquirrelDataExporter.properties

Alternatively, you can execute the utility by running the exportsd.bat script, using the following command-line syntax:

exportsd SquirrelDataExporter.properties

The batch file performs the following operations, as shown in Listing 4-1.

- Checks to see if the administrator submitted a property file on the command line when running the script
- If the administrator does not submit an argument, the script echoes a usage statement that describes the command-line syntax
- Calls the set\_tools\_environment.bat script, which sets the environment variables
- Executes the Squirrel Data Exporter utility using the name of the properties file as an argument

Listing 4-1 export\_squirrel\_data.bat

```
@echo off
if %1.==. goto :HELP
:: Set up environment variables
CALL "%~dp0"set_tools_environment.bat
:: Export Squirrel data
java com.actuate.iserver.encyclopedia.datastore.admin
.SquirrelDataExporter %1
GOTO :END
:HELP
echo Usage: export_squirrel_data.bat ^<properties file name^>
:END
```

In the batch file, the ^ symbol is a line-continuation character.

#### How to import an Encyclopedia volume in a side-by-side installation

To import an Encyclopedia volume from an earlier iServer release to BIRT iServer Release 11 from the staging area, you use the Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator utility. To import the volume, perform the following tasks:

- 1 Run the Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator by performing the following tasks:
  - 1 In Release 11 AC\_SERVER\_HOME\bin, create a properties file named VolumeImport.properties. You pass this file to the Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator utility when you execute it. Use the following example to create VolumeImport.properties:

```
AC_SERVER_HOME = C:/Program Files/Actuate11SP3/iServer
DATABASE_TYPE = PostgreSQL
DATABASE_NAME = iserver
DATABASE_NAME = iocalhost
DATABASE_HOST = localhost
DATABASE_PORT = 8432
SUPERUSER = postgres
SUPERUSER = postgres
SUPERUSER_PASSWORD = <your superuser password>
SCHEMA_NAME = ac_corp
SCHEMA_PASSWORD = <your schema password>
IMPORT_DATA = true
DATA IMPORT FOLDER = C:/Actuate11/SquirrelData/ac corp
```

See Table 4-3 for descriptions of the required Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator properties. See Table 4-4 for descriptions of the optional Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator properties. See "Configuring Squirrel Data Exporter and System or Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator properties files" for additional notes on property files.

- 2 Open a command prompt and navigate to release 11SP3 AC\_SERVER \_HOME/bin.
- **3** Run the administrate\_encyclopedia\_data\_store.bat file using the following command line syntax:

administrate\_encyclopedia\_data\_store VolumeImport.properties

Alternatively, you can execute the utility by running the admineds.bat script, using the following command-line syntax:

admineds VolumeImport.properties

The batch file performs the following operations, as shown in Listing 4-2.

- Checks to see if the administrator submitted a property file on the command line when running the script
- If the administrator does not submit an argument, the script echoes a usage statement that describes the command-line syntax
- Calls the set\_tools\_environment.bat script, which sets the environment variables
- Executes the Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator utility using the name of the properties file as an argument

```
Listing 4-2 administrate_encyclopedia_data_store.bat
```

```
@echo off
if %1.==. goto :HELP
:: Set up environment variables
CALL "%~dp0"set_tools_environment.bat
:: Administrate data store
java com.actuate.iserver.encyclopedia.datastore.admin
   .EncyclopediaDataStoreAdministrator %1
GOTO :END
:HELP
echo Usage: administrate_encyclopedia_data_store.bat
   ^<properties file name^>
:END
```

In the batch file, the ^ symbol is a line-continuation character.

- **2** Create a new volume for the migrated volume by performing the following tasks:
  - 1 Log in to Configuration Console and choose Advanced view.
  - **2** From the side menu, choose Volumes.
  - **3** On Volumes, point to the icon next to a volume schema and choose Add Volume, as shown in Figure 4-101.



Figure 4-101 Choosing to add a volume

- 4 On New Volume—General, perform the following tasks:
  - In Volume name, type the name you specified for NEW\_VOLUME\_NAME in SquirrelDataExporter.properties.
  - 2 In Primary partition, specify the partition you created previously, as shown in Figure 4-102.

Volumes         > New Volume           General         Open Security         Partitions	Events	
Volume name: Description:	corp	]* ] ]
Schedule for purging notices:	Partition       ac_corp_partition     * (C) Min Free Space:	HH:mm BC

Figure 4-102 Specifying volume and partition name

Choose Partitions.

- 5 On New Volume—Partitions, perform the following tasks:
  - 1 In Available partitions, select the partition that you specified in the previous step, then move it to Selected by choosing the right arrow.
  - 2 In Selected partitions, select the partition. Choose Start, as shown in Figure 4-103.

Volumes > New Volume	
Assign partitions	<u></u>
Available partitions: Selected partitions:	
ac_corp_partition ac_corp_partition Unused	
Low Free Space:	
Min Free Space:	MBI
	·····
	OK Cancel Apply

Figure 4-103 Assigning a partition

Choose OK.

**3** On Volumes, point to the icon next to the new volume name and choose Take online, as shown in Figure 4-104.

Volumes					
≣▼	Act upon selected iter	ns			
🖶 Metadata Database	Schema	Туре	🗖 Volume	Status	Description
≡▼ <u>Default ActuatePostgreSQL MetadataDataba</u>	<u>se</u> ≣≭ <u>ac corp</u>	Volume	□ ≡ <sup>*</sup> <u>corp</u>	♥ OFFLINE	<u> </u>
	≣▼ <u>ac corp system</u>	1 System	Prop	perties	
Legend			Tak	e online	
Changes pending require volume restart to take	effect		Ren	nove	

Figure 4-104 Viewing the new volume

The new volume comes online, as shown in Figure 4-105.

Volumes			
≣▼	Act upon selected iter	ns	
🖶 Metadata Database	Schema	Type 📕 Volum	e Status Description
≣▼ Default ActuatePostgreSQL MetadataDatabas	<u>e</u> ≣‴ <u>ac_corp</u>	Volume [□ ≣* <u>corp</u>	
	≡* <u>ac corp system</u>	_ System	
Legend			
Changes pending require volume restart to take	effect		

Figure 4-105 Viewing the new volume after it comes online

- **4** Log in to Management Console. In Files and Folders, the data from the previous release appears.
- **5** If you are satisfied that the contents of the migrated volume are correct and complete, delete the folder specified in SQUIRREL\_EXPORT\_FOLDER property in the SquirrelDataExporter.properties file.

#### **Specifying Squirrel Data Exporter properties**

Table 4-1 describes the required Squirrel Data Exporter properties used to configure the environment for a manual export operation.

Parameter	Description
AC_SERVER_HOME	Points to the location of the iServer binaries, which you specify during the BIRT iServer Release 11 installation, as shown in Figure 4-64.
NEW_SCHEMA _NAME	The name of the target schema into which the Squirrel Data Exporter loads data. Restrict the schema name to alphanumeric and underscore characters with an initial alphabetic character in the pattern [a-z][a-z 0-9]*. Do not use a hyphen.

 Table 4-1
 Required Squirrel Data Exporter properties

Parameter	Description
NEW_VOLUME _NAME	The name of the migrated volume on BIRT iServer Release 11. This name does not need to match the name this volume had on your earlier iServer release.
SQUIRREL_DATA _HOME	Absolute path to the folder on your earlier iServer release containing the Encyclopedia volume you want to migrate.
SQUIRREL_EXPORT _FOLDER	Absolute path to the folder that Squirrel Data Exporter creates, containing the volume data from SQUIRREL_DATA_HOME, which Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator loads into the new volume on BIRT iServer Release 11.
SQUIRREL_EXPORT _FORMAT	Format of exported data. Specify DB2, Oracle, PostgreSQL, or SQLServer.

 Table 4-1
 Required Squirrel Data Exporter properties

Table 4-2 describes the optional Squirrel Data Exporter properties to specify in a SquirrelDataExporter.properties file for performing logging.

 Table 4-2
 Optional Squirrel Data Exporter properties

Property	Value	Default Value
FILE_LOG_LEVEL	The minimum logging level for messages sent to the log file. This parameter only works for AcLogger. Supported values are CONFIG, FINE, FINER, and FINEST.	CONFIG
LOG_FILE_COUNT	Maximum number of log files to create before starting to overwrite previous log files. Must be a valid integer. Data Store Administrator tools do not generate large logs.	5
LOG_FILE_SIZE	Maximum size of log files, in byte, before a new log file starts. Must be a valid integer. Data Store Administrator tools do not generate large logs.	10,000,000
LOG_FOLDER	Absolute path to the log folder.	AC_DATA _HOME/ server/log.

## Specifying Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator properties

Table 4-3 describes the required Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator properties used to configure the environment for a manual migration operation.

 Table 4-3
 Required Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator properties

Parameter	Description
AC_SERVER_HOME	Points to the location of the iServer binaries, which you specify during the BIRT iServer Release 11 installation, as shown in Figure 4-64.
DATABASE_TYPE	Type of supported RDBMS that contains the data store: PostgreSQL or Oracle.
LOG_FOLDER	Absolute path to the log folder.
SCHEMA_FILE_NAME	Base name of the file without the extension that contains the meta-schema definition.
SCRIPT_HOME	Absolute path to the root of the folder hierarchy that contains the scripts and the meta-schema definition.

Table 4-4 describes optional Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator properties. The properties used depend on the type of operation performed and the installation environment.

Parameter	Description	Default Value	Supported Databases
APPLICATION_USER	Application user ID for connecting to the database for normal operations. Must be a legal SQL identifier. Typically iserver. This parameter is required when creating or populating a schema. Restrict the iServer application user name to alphanumeric and underscore characters with an initial alphabetic character in the pattern [a-z][a-z 0-9]*. Do not use a hyphen.		All

Table 4-4	Optional Encyclopedia I	Data Store Administrator	properties
-----------	-------------------------	--------------------------	------------

Parameter	Description	Default Value	Supported Databases
APPLICATION_USER _PASSWORD	Application user password for connecting to the database for normal operations. Required when creating a schema. The password is not encrypted.		All
CONFIG_SCHEMA _NAME	Specifies the schema definition in acserverconfig.xml. Required when USE_SERVER_CONFIG _FILE is true. The schema name can be different from the database schema name.	False	All
CREATE_SCHEMA	Set to true to create a new schema, false to use an existing schema. Specifies whether to create a new Encyclopedia schema. PostgreSQL only, not supported for Oracle. Creating a schema automatically creates the schema owner and application user if necessary.	False	PostgreSQL
DATA_EXPORT _FOLDER	Absolute path to the folder to which data is exported. This parameter is required if EXPORT_DATA is true. Folder is on the database machine.		All
DATA_EXPORT _FORMAT	Format of exported data. Specify 'Oracle' or 'PostgreSQL'.	{DATABASE _TYPE}	All
DATA_IMPORT _FOLDER	Absolute path to the folder from which data is imported. This parameter is required if IMPORT_DATA is true. For PostgreSQL, the data must be on the database server.		PostgreSQL
DATA_IMPORT _FORMAT	Format of imported data. Specify 'Oracle' or 'PostgreSQL'.	{DATABASE _TYPE}	PostgreSQL
			(continues)

Parameter	Description	Default Value	Supported Databases
DATABASE_HOST	Hostname or IP address of the machine hosting the database. This value is required for PostgreSQL. Required for Oracle if not using TNS.		All
DATABASE _INSTANCE	RDBMS instance that manages the database.		SQL Server
DATABASE_NAME	Database name for PostgreSQL. For Oracle not using TNS, the database service name. For Oracle using TNS, the TNS net service name.		All
DATABASE_PORT	Port that the database server uses. This value is required for PostgreSQL. Required for Oracle if not using TNS.		All
DATABASE_TYPE	Type of relational database system that contains the data store. Actuate Release 11 currently supports PostgreSQL and Oracle.		All
DELETE_ALL_DATA	Set to true to delete all data from the data store. Does not delete data from other tables in the schema.	False	All
			(continues)
DELETE_DATA	Set to true to delete filtered data from the data store. This parameter only works when a filter value is available.	False	All
DEPOPULATE _SCHEMA	Set to true to delete data store elements such as tables, views, stored functions, and procedures from the schema. Does not remove any other objects in the schema.	False	All
DROP_SCHEMA	Set to true to delete the schema.	False	PostgreSQL
EXPORT_ALL_DATA	Set to true to export all data from the data store.	False	All

Parameter	Description	Default Value	Supported Databases
EXPORT_DATA	Set to true to export filtered data from the data store. This parameter only works when a filter value is available.	False	All
FILE_LOG_LEVEL	The minimum logging level for messages sent to the log file. This parameter only works for AcLogger, and is a standard JUL Level name. Supported values are CONFIG, FINE, FINER, and FINEST.	CONFIG	All
IMPORT_DATA	Set to true to import data into the data store.	False	All
INITIALIZE_DATA	Set to true to initialize the data in the data store, using the data initialization script.	False	All
LOG_FILE_COUNT	Maximum number of log files to create before starting to overwrite previous log files. Must be a valid integer. Data Store Administrator tools do not generate large logs.	5	All
LOG_FILE_NAME	The name of the log file. Do not add a file extension. The extension is set to .log. A unique number is appended automatically to the file name to prevent overwriting previous logs.	Encyclopedia DataStore Administrator <number>.log</number>	
LOG_FILE_SIZE	Approximate maximum size of log files, in byte, before a new log file starts. Must be a valid integer. Data Store Administrator tools do not generate large logs.	10,000,000	All
LOG_FOLDER	The full path of folder to write logs.	AC_DATA _HOME/ server/log.	

(continues)

Parameter	Description	Default Value	Supported Databases
NEW_SCHEMA _NAME	Name of the new schema to be created, or the name of the target schema for data export. This name is required if {SCHEMA_NAME} is not present. Restrict schema name to alphanumeric and underscore characters with an initial alphabetic character in the pattern [a-z][a-z 0-9]*. Do not use a hyphen.	{NEW _SCHEMA _NAME}	All
NEW_SCHEMA _PASSWORD	Password of the database superuser. This parameter is required if {NEW_SCHEMA _NAME} is present.	{NEW _SCHEMA _PASSWWORD}	All
NEW_VOLUME _NAME	Name of the new volume to be created, or the name of the target schema for data export. Do not use a hyphen in a volume name.	{NEW _VOLUME _NAME}	All
ORACLE_TNS _NAMES_FILE	Absolute path to the Oracle TNS names file. This path can be used instead of {DATABASE_HOST} and {DATABASE_PORT} to generate a JDBC URL.		Oracle
POPULATE_SCHEMA	Set to true to populate the schema with data store elements such as tables, views, stored functions, and procedures. Set to false if the data store elements already exist. Use Configuration Console to populate schema when possible. Schema automatically populates when defined in Configuration Console.	{CREATE _SCHEMA}	All
POPULATE_SCHEMA _PHASE_ONE	Set to true to create the schema objects necessary for data to be loaded. Set to false to prevent this schema object creation. Imports data without building indexes for fast load.	{POPULATE _SCHEMA}	All

Parameter	Description Default Value		Supported Databases
POPULATE_SCHEMA _PHASE_TWO	Set to true to create schema objects phase one does not create. Set to false to prevent this schema object creation. Builds indexes and other ancillary structures in database.	{POPULATE _SCHEMA}	All
SCHEMA_NAME	Name of the existing schema. Must be a legal SQL identifier. This parameter is required when performing operations on an existing schema. Restrict schema name to alphanumeric and underscore characters with an initial alphabetic character in the pattern [a-z][a-z 0-9]*. Do not use a hyphen.	{SCHEMA _NAME}	All
SCHEMA_PASSWORD	Name of the existing schema. Must be a legal SQL identifier. This parameter is required when performing operations on an existing schema.	{SCHEMA _NAME}	All
SUPERUSER	User ID of the database superuser. This parameter is required if CREATE_SCHEMA is true or when importing data into PostgreSQL Typically postgres in a PostgreSQL database.		PostgreSQL
SUPERUSER _PASSWORD	Password of the database superuser. This parameter is required if CREATE_SCHEMA is true or when importing data into PostgreSQL		PostgreSQL
SYSTEM_DATABASE _NAME	Name of the system database.		PostgreSQL
TABLESPACE_NAME	Name of the application tablespace.		PostgreSQL
TABLESPACE _LOCATION	Absolute path to the application tablespace folder.		PostgreSQL
			(continues)

Parameter	Description	Default Value	Supported Databases
TIME_ZONE	Local time zone for installation.		All
USE_SERVER_CONFIG _FILE	Reads connection information from acserverconfig.xml. Password is not picked up from acserverconfig.xml. Default value is false.	False	All
VOLUME_NAME	Name of the volume or target schema for data import.	{VOLUME _NAME}	All

#### Specifying System Data Store Administrator properties

The system data store is a separate schema in the database that stores iServer metadata. The system schema is a required element for any iServer installation. In a cluster, the nodes share the system schema metadata and use this information to communicate and coordinate processing.

In Release 11, it is not necessary to back up the iServer system schema, although future versions may require this procedure to protect critical system metadata. If a system schema becomes corrupted or is accidentally deleted, the administrator can use the System Data Store Administrator utility to create a new schema. You can define a new system schema in Configuration Console or edit acserverconfig.xml to refer to the current system schema.

Use the System Data Store Administrator utility to perform the following tasks:

- Create or delete a schema
- Populate or depopulate a schema
- Import or export data

Before running the System Data Store Administrator utility, add the following string to the PATH environment variable on your machine:

<AC\_SERVER\_HOME>\bin

In this instance, AC\_SERVER\_HOME refers to the release 11SP3 AC\_SERVER\_HOME. For example, using the default value for AC\_SERVER\_HOME, add:

C:\Program Files\Actuate11SP3\iServer\bin

To run the System Data Store Administrator utility, perform the following tasks:

1 In Windows Explorer, navigate to AC\_SERVER\_HOME\bin.

- **2** Create a properties file containing the property definitions necessary to perform an operation, such as creating and populating a system schema, described in "Creating and Populating a System Schema," later in this book. You pass this file to the System Data Store Administrator utility when you execute it.
- **3** Open a command prompt and navigate to AC\_SERVER\_HOME/bin.
- **4** Run the administrate\_system\_data\_store.bat file using the following command line syntax:

administrate\_system\_data\_store systemdatastore.properties

Alternatively, you can execute the utility by running the upgrdeds.bat script, using the following command-line syntax:

adminsds systemdatastore.properties

The batch file performs the following operations, as shown in Listing 4-3.

- Checks to see if the administrator submitted a property file on the command line when running the script
- If the administrator does not submit an argument, the script echoes a usage statement that describes the command-line syntax
- Calls the set\_tools\_environment.bat script, which sets the environment variables
- Executes the System Data Store Administrator utility using the name of the properties file as an argument

#### Listing 4-3 administrate\_system\_data\_store.bat

```
@echo off
if %1.==. goto :HELP
:: Set up environment variables
CALL "%~dp0"set_tools_environment.bat
:: Administrate data store
java com.actuate.iserver.system.datastore.admin
.SystemDataStoreAdministrator %1
GOTO :END
:HELP
echo Usage: administrate_system_data_store.bat ^<properties
file name^>
:END
```

In the example, the ^ character functions as a line continuation marker to concatentate the lines together.

The SystemDataStoreAdministrator class has the same parent class as the Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator and uses the same property settings. For more information about these properties, see Table 4-3.

System Data Store Administrator properties include the following categories:

- Properties that specify details of the iServer installation environment, such as AC\_SERVER\_HOME and AC\_DATA\_HOME
- Database properties specify the RDBMS type and JDBC connection details, such as the schema, application user, and superuser names and passwords
- Schema operation properties that specify an action to perform, such as create, populate, or delete a schema
- Logging properties that control messages sent to the console and log files
- Engineering properties used by Actuate Support or Professional Services to assist with diagnosing or resolving specific issues

Refer to the required and optional properties tables in "Specifying Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator properties," earlier in this chapter for detailed information about these properties.

## Performing operations using System Data Store Administrator utility

The System Data Store Administrator utility supports a range of import and export operations in the BIRT iServer environment. The following sections describe a mix of operational scenarios that an administrator can perform using this utility.

#### **Creating and Populating a System Schema**

This operation is only supported for PostgreSQL. Creating and populating a schema requires superuser privileges. The System Data Store Administrator utility creates the database and users if these items do not already exist.

Configure the properties as shown in the following example:

```
AC_SERVER_HOME = C:/Program Files/Actuate11SP3/iServer
DATABASE_TYPE = PostgreSQL
DATABASE_NAME = iserver
DATABASE_HOST = localhost
DATABASE_PORT = 8432
SYSTEM_DATABASE_NAME = postgres
SUPERUSER = postgres
SUPERUSER = postgres
```

```
APPLICATION_USER = iserver

APPLICATION_USER_PASSWORD = <provide a password>

CREATE_SCHEMA = true

NEW_SCHEMA_NAME = <provide a name>

NEW_SCHEMA_PASSWORD = <provide a password>

INITIALIZE_DATA = true
```

### Performing operations using Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator utility

The Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator utility supports a wide range of import and export operations in the BIRT iServer environment. The following sections describe a mix of operational scenarios that an administrator can perform using this utility.

#### Importing One or More Volumes into a New Schema

This operation is only supported for PostgreSQL. NEW\_SCHEMA\_NAME does not need to match the schema name from which the Squirrel Data Exporter utility exported the data. Do not change the volume names, since these names are defined in the exported data.

Creating a schema requires superuser privileges. The Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator utility creates the database and users if these items do not already exist.

Configure these properties as shown in the following example:

```
AC_SERVER_HOME = C:/Program Files/Actuate11SP3/iServer
DATABASE_TYPE = PostgreSQL
SYSTEM_DATABASE_NAME = postgres
SUPERUSER = postgres
SUPERUSER_PASSWORD = <provide a password>
DATABASE_NAME = iserver
DATABASE_HOST = localhost
DATABASE_PORT = 8432
CREATE_SCHEMA = true
NEW_SCHEMA_NAME = <provide a name>
NEW_SCHEMA_NAME = <provide a name>
NEW_SCHEMA_PASSWORD = <provide a password>
APPLICATION_USER = iserver
APPLICATION_USER_PASSWORD = <provide a password>
IMPORT_DATA = true
DATA_IMPORT_FOLDER = {SQUIRREL_EXPORT_FOLDER}
```

#### Importing One or More Volumes into a Populated Schema

This operation is only supported for PostgreSQL. Typically, you perform this operation to import an additional volume into a shared schema that already contains one or more volumes.

SCHEMA\_NAME does not need to match the schema name from which the Squirrel Data Exporter utility exported the data. Do not change the volume names, because these names are defined in the exported data. Importing data into PostgreSQL requires superuser privileges.

Configure these properties as shown in the following example:

```
AC_SERVER_HOME = C:/Program Files/Actuate11SP3/iServer
DATABASE_TYPE = PostgreSQL
SUPERUSER = postgres
SUPERUSER_PASSWORD = <provide a password>
DATABASE_NAME = iserver
DATABASE_HOST = localhost
DATABASE_PORT = 8432
SCHEMA_NAME = <provide a name>
SCHEMA_PASSWORD = <provide a password>
IMPORT_DATA = true
DATA_IMPORT_FOLDER = {SQUIRREL_EXPORT_FOLDER}
```

#### **Exporting All Volumes from a Schema**

Squirrel Data Exporter generates bulk load script files in the same folder as the exported data. You can omit NEW\_SCHEMA\_NAME if it is the same as SCHEMA\_NAME.

Configure these properties as shown in the following example:

```
AC_SERVER_HOME = C:/Program Files/Actuate11SP3/iServer
DATABASE_TYPE = PostgreSQL
DATABASE_NAME = iserver
DATABASE_HOST = localhost
DATABASE_PORT = 8432
SCHEMA_NAME = <provide a name>
SCHEMA_PASSWORD = <provide a password>
EXPORT_ALL_DATA = true
NEW_SCHEMA_NAME = <provide a name>
DATA_EXPORT_FOLDER = C:/Projects/DataStores/Data
DATA_EXPORT_FORMAT = Oracle
```

#### **Exporting A Single Volume from a Schema**

Squirrel Data Exporter generates bulk load script files in the same folder as the exported data. You can omit NEW\_SCHEMA\_NAME if it is the same as

SCHEMA\_NAME. You can omit NEW\_VOLUME\_NAME if it is the same as VOLUME\_NAME.

Configure these properties as shown in the following example:

```
AC_SERVER_HOME = C:/Program Files/Actuate11SP3/iServer
DATABASE_TYPE = PostgreSQL
DATABASE_NAME = iserver
DATABASE_NAME = iserver
DATABASE_HOST = localhost
DATABASE_PORT = 8432
SCHEMA_NAME = <provide a name>
SCHEMA_PASSWORD = <provide a name>
SCHEMA_PASSWORD = <provide a name>
NEW_SCHEMA_NAME = <provide a name>
NEW_SCHEMA_NAME = <provide a name>
NEW_VOLUME_NAME = <provide a name>
DATA_EXPORT_FOLDER = D:/Projects/DataStores/Data
DATA_EXPORT_FORMAT = Oracle
```

#### **Deleting All Volumes from a Schema**

Perform this operation to remove all volumes from the schema that SCHEMA\_NAME specifies.

Configure these properties as shown in the following example:

```
AC_SERVER_HOME = C:/Program Files/Actuate11SP3/iServer
DATABASE_TYPE = PostgreSQL
DATABASE_NAME = iserver
DATABASE_HOST = localhost
DATABASE_PORT = 8432
SCHEMA_NAME = <provide a name>
SCHEMA_PASSWORD = <provide a password>
DELETE ALL DATA = true
```

#### Deleting a Single Volume from a Schema

Perform this operation to remove the volume that VOLUME\_NAME specifies from the schema that SCHEMA\_NAME specifies.

Configure these properties as shown in the following example:

```
AC_SERVER_HOME = C:/Program Files/Actuate11SP3/iServer
DATABASE_TYPE = PostgreSQL
DATABASE_NAME = iserver
DATABASE_HOST = localhost
DATABASE_PORT = 8432
SCHEMA_NAME = <provide a name>
SCHEMA_PASSWORD = <provide a password>
DELETE DATA = true
```

```
VOLUME_NAME = <provide a name>
```

#### Creating a New Volume in an Empty Schema

iServer performs this operation when you create a new volume in Configuration Console and bring the volume online. When creating a new volume using Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator, set INITIALIZE\_DATA to true and specify a name for NEW\_VOLUME\_NAME.

Setting POPULATE\_SCHEMA to true to have Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator create schema elements, such as tables and indexes in an empty schema. The schema owner and application user must already exist and have appropriate privileges.

Configure these properties as shown in the following example:

```
AC_SERVER_HOME = C:/Program Files/Actuate11SP3/iServer
DATABASE_TYPE = Oracle
DATABASE_NAME = xe
DATABASE_HOST = localhost
DATABASE_PORT = 1521
SCHEMA_NAME = <provide a name>
SCHEMA_PASSWORD = <provide a password>
APPLICATION_USER = iserver
POPULATE_SCHEMA = true
INITIALIZE_DATA = true
NEW_VOLUME_NAME = <provide a name>
TIME ZONE = America/Los Angeles
```

#### Creating a New Volume in a Populated Schema

iServer performs this operation when you create a new volume in Configuration Console and bring the volume online. Typically, you perform this operation to add a volume to a shared schema that already contains one or more volumes.

When creating a new volume using Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator, set INITIALIZE\_DATA to true and specify a name for NEW\_VOLUME\_NAME. The schema owner and application user must already exist and have appropriate privileges.

Configure these properties as shown in the following example:

```
AC_SERVER_HOME = C:/Program Files/Actuate11SP3/iServer
DATABASE_TYPE = Oracle
DATABASE_NAME = xe
DATABASE_HOST = localhost
DATABASE_PORT = 1521
SCHEMA_NAME = <provide a name>
SCHEMA_PASSWORD = <provide a password>
APPLICATION_USER = iserver
```

```
INITIALIZE_DATA = true
NEW_VOLUME_NAME = <provide a name>
TIME_ZONE = America/Los_Angeles
```

#### Creating and Initializing a New Volume in a New Schema

This operation is only supported for PostgreSQL. iServer typically performs this operation when you create a new schema and volume in Configuration Console and bring the volume online.

Creating a schema requires superuser privileges. Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator creates the database and users if these items do not already exist.

Configure these properties as shown in the following example:

```
AC SERVER HOME = C:/Program Files/Actuate11SP3/iServer
DATABASE TYPE = PostgreSQL
DATABASE NAME = iserver
DATABASE HOST = localhost
DATABASE PORT = 8432
SYSTEM DATABASE NAME = postgres
SUPERUSER = postgres
SUPERUSER PASSWORD = <provide a password>
CREATE SCHEMA = true
NEW SCHEMA NAME = <provide a name>
NEW SCHEMA PASSWORD = <provide a password>
APPLICATION USER = iserver
APPLICATION USER PASSWORD = <provide a password>
INITIALIZE DATA = true
NEW VOLUME NAME = <provide a name>
TIME ZONE = America/Los Angeles
```

#### Configuring Squirrel Data Exporter and System or Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator properties files

When configuring Squirrel Data Exporter and System or Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator properties files, observe the following rules:

- Use / in path settings. \ is an escape character.
- Use Unicode property values. Save the property file in UTF-8 format, including the UTF-8 byte order mark (BOM).
- Use # at the start of a line to add a comment or selectively comment out properties.

When reading the property files, the utilities remove leading and trailing whitespace automatically, but preserve embedded whitespace.

#### Chapter

# 5

## Installing a BIRT iServer cluster

This chapter discusses the following topics:

- Installing a BIRT iServer cluster node
- Performing a cluster node installation using the wizard
- Adding a node to a cluster

#### Installing a BIRT iServer cluster node

A node is a machine running an BIRT iServer instance. An iServer administrator adds a node to an iServer cluster to scale the cluster installation to necessary processing requirements.

There are two methods of adding a new node to the cluster:

- Perform an automated, custom installation, using the wizard-driven installation program
- Perform a manual installation or cloud deployment, using a prepared image of an installed iServer run-time environment

Every cluster node must have network access to the following directory and resources to join the cluster:

- The shared configuration home directory
- Cluster resources, such as printers, database systems, and disk storage systems

Each node gets its configuration from a template in acserverconfig.xml, which is located in a shared configuration home directory along with the license file, acserverlicense.xml.

The acserverconfig.xml file contains the server templates as well as other configuration parameters specifying the host names, volume names, port numbers, printers, and services used by nodes in the cluster. When the Process Management Daemon (PMD) starts up, it reads these configurations and exposes them to the process environment variable list. When a node joins a cluster, it configures itself using its template.

After deployment and configuring the appropriate environment variables in acpmdconfig.xml, the administrator launches a deployed iServer image from the command line by passing the necessary arguments or creates a script that executes the commands. Nodes with the same cluster ID, running on the same sub-net, automatically detect and join each other to form the cluster. This feature is known as elastic iServer clustering.

The cluster communicates across the network using standard HTTP/IP addressing. The cluster automatically detects the on-off status of any node. Single-point node failure does not affect the availability of other nodes.

One or more nodes in the cluster manage the request message routing. The Process Management Daemons (PMDs) located on each node coordinate processing among available iServer services based on message type to balance load across the nodes.

iServer instances running on multiple machines maintain iServer system and Encyclopedia volume metadata in databases and control access to shared volume data. The volume data can be on machines that are not running iServer, but must be shared and accessible to each iServer instance.

This loosely-coupled cluster model provides the following maintenance and performance benefits:

- Startup and shutdown of an iServer is fast because it is independent of the RDBMS that manages the Encyclopedia volume. An RDBMS can remain online when shutting down an iServer and the RDBMS is available when the iServer starts up.
- Controlling the sequence of Encyclopedia volume startup is not necessary. All
  volumes are either already online in the RDBMS or come online as the RDBMS
  starts.
- Downtime to apply a patch fix patch or a diagnostic fix for an iServer is reduced. The RDBMS, including the OOTB PostgreSQL database server, does not have to be shutdown. In an iServer cluster, the patch or diagnostic fix can be applied to one iServer node at a time.

This operational model lends itself well to grid, cloud, and other data-center types of deployments. For more information about the cloud computing deployment option, see Chapter 6, "Installing BIRT iServer in a cloud," later in this book. For more information about administering an installed iServer cluster, see Chapter 9, "Clustering," in *Configuring BIRT iServer*.

## Creating an account with Windows administrator privileges

Before installing iServer, create a Windows user account that is a member of the Administrators group. Use this account when installing and running iServer.

The iServer user account must meet the following requirements:

- Be a member of the Windows Administrators group.
   The account must have privileges to access the required software and hardware, such as database servers, printers, and iServer files and folders.
- Have log on as a service privilege.

If the account does not meet this requirement, the iServer installation program prompts you to configure the privilege to run the Windows Actuate iServer service.

On a new Windows Vista installation, the initial user account is not a member of the Administrators group. You must configure this user account to be a member of this group. When installing iServer in Windows 2003, create a Windows user account that is a member of the Power Users not the Administrators group. Make sure that the Account has permission to access any printers required for printing. Perform the installation using an account that has Administrator privileges. During the installation, when prompted to specify the user account to run the iServer service, specify the Power User account.

For more information about configuring a Power User and iServer account and log on as a service privilege, see "Creating an account with Windows administrator privileges," in Chapter 2, "Installing BIRT iServer."

#### Performing a cluster node installation using the wizard

When you create a BIRT iServer cluster, you must install and run all cluster nodes using the same administrative user account. The following section describes how to install an iServer Release 11 cluster node in the Windows operating system using the installation wizard.

#### How to install a cluster node in Windows

1 If you downloaded iServer, run ActuateBIRTiServerEnterprise.exe. If you have a DVD or ftp distribution, run setup.exe. The welcome message appears, as shown in Figure 5-1. Choose Next.



Figure 5-1

- 5-1 Viewing the welcome message
- **2** Read and accept the license agreement, as shown in Figure 5-2. Choose Next.

**3** The setup installs the prerequisite components that BIRT iServer requires, as shown in Figure 5-3. Choose Next.



Figure 5-2 Accepting the license agreement





4 In Setup Type, select Custom, as shown in Figure 5-4.

In Destination Folder, accept the default or choose a new destination folder for the Program and Data locations. Choose Next.

iServer uses the Program location to resolve the paths to all the binaries that it launches. The environment variable, AC\_SERVER\_HOME, points to the location of the iServer binaries. The default path for the program location is C:/Program Files/Actuate11SP3/iServer.

iServer uses the Data location to store the iServer logs, iServer encyclopedia, including the PostgreSQL data, and all other run-time data. The environment variable, AC\_DATA\_HOME, points to the location of the iServer data. The default path for the data location is C:/Actuate/iServer/data.

Each iServer instance must to have its own AC\_SERVER\_HOME and AC\_DATA\_HOME folders. These folders cannot be shared by other nodes in a cluster.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup			×			
Setup Type Please choose the setup type.						
<u>ر</u> م'	setup you prefer.					
	Typical	Program installs the most common options. Recommended	for most users.			
$\cap$	Custom Choose the options to install. Recommended for advanced users.					
	- Destination Folders					
<u> </u>	Program location					
	C:\Program Files\Actuate11SP3\\Server Browse Data location:					
Act	C:\Actuate\iSe	nver\data	Browse			
InstallShield		< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel			

Figure 5-4 Selecting the Custom installation

- **5** In Select Features, select all features—Core products, Management Console, AFC files from previous releases, and Examples, as shown in Figure 5-5. A cluster node must have access to Configuration Console. Configuration Console installs with Management Console. Choose Next.
- **6** In iServer Installation Option, select Cluster node to install iServer as a cluster node. Then specify the configuration home location, as shown in Figure 5-6.

The configuration home location is the shared directory containing the acserverconfig.xml, acserverlicence.xml, and acconfigowner.lock files for the
cluster. The administrator should specify the location using the Universal Naming Convention (UNC) Format.

In a Release 11 Service Pack 3 installation, the configuration files are located in AC\_DATA\_HOME\config\11SP3 by default. If the shared configuration folder is in this default location on a server named urup, then the administrator should specify \\urup\11SP3 as the path.

Note that in a cluster setup, the administrator must edit <ServerFileSystemSetting> in the shared acserverconfig.xml file to point to the shared drive location that contains the Encyclopedia data files. For more information about configuring an iServer node to run in a cluster, see "Adding a node to a cluster," later in this chapter.

Choose Next.





Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup	
iServer Installation Option Please choose the iServer insta	allation option.
	Choose iServer installation option. Choose Stand-alone if this machine is going to be made into a primary node.
Ĕ	Stand-alone Install a stand-alone iServer.
	Cluster node Install a member of an iServer cluster.
te /	Specify the configuration home location:
l an	\\urup\11SP3 Browse
Ct	
- V	
InstallShield	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

Figure 5-6 Choosing the option to install a node

7 In License File Details, select Use the license that you purchased. Choose Browse then navigate to and choose the license file, as shown in Figure 5-7. Choose Next. Alternatively, choose Try out the product using the included evaluation software license if you do not have a purchased license.



Figure 5-7 Specifying the license file

If installing using a named user license, a prompt appears advising you to check that the volume does not exceed the number of registered users authorized by the license, as shown in Figure 5-8.

Questio	n 🗵
?	You are using a Named User License. Please make sure that the internal or external Encyclopedia volume does not exceed the number of registered users authorized by the license. Please contact the Actuate Customer Support Center or licensing@actuate.com for further assistance.
	Click Yes to continue or No to abort the installation.
	Yes No

Figure 5-8 Viewing the named user license question

Choose Yes to continue the installation.

- **8** In Locale Information, choose Next to accept the default language and time zone, as shown in Figure 5-9. Alternatively, choose the language and locale settings for your region.
- **9** In Specify Profiles, type the user name, password, and confirm the password for the account used to start the Actuate BIRT iServer 11 service, as shown in Figure 5-10. The account must be a member of the Administrators group. Actuate recommends that you limit access to this account for security reasons.

If you are installing on Windows 2003, specify a user account that is in the Power Users not the Administrators group. A user account in the Administrators group cannot start the Actuate 11 BIRT iServer service.

Accept Automatically start the Actuate BIRT iServer 11 service when Windows boots, as shown in Figure 5-10. If you deselect this option, you must start the service manually from Windows Services. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup	
Locale Information Please specify default locale in	formation.
	Specify the language and time zone for the iServer. This will be the default for all users.
Č	Language: English (United States)
Actuate	Time zone: America/Los_Angeles (America/Los_Angeles)
InstallShield	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel

Figure 5-9 Specifying a language

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup		
Specify Profiles		
Please specify account information	on.	
Actuate ne	iServer runs as a service on Windows. Specify the account information to use. Important Note: If you are installing on Windows 2003, please select a windows user account hat is in the Power User NOT the administrator group. The iServer Encyclopedia service won't start with an account in the administrator group. User name: Administrator Password: Ministrator Confirm password: Ministrator Confirm password: Ministrator	
InstallShield	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel



**10** In iServer Configuration, shown in Figure 5-11, type the cluster node name or IP address for the node. Type a port number or accept the default port number, 8100. The Actuate BIRT iServer 11 service on Windows binds to this port number to listen for requests. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup			
iServer Configuration Please specify configuration fo	or iServer and Process Manageme	ent Daemon.	
۵J	Specify the host name and	port number that PMD should bind to listen fo	r requests.
Č	Host name/IP address:	urup	
Actuate	Port number:	8100	
InstallShield	< <u>B</u>	ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel



**11** In System Configuration Password, type a Configuration Console password, as shown in Figure 5-12. Note that the default user name for Management Console is Administrator with no password. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup		×
System Configuration Passer Specify the system configuration	ord an password	
Ū.	Specify the password you want to use for the Gerver Configuration Console. This password is only for the Configuration Console.	
Č	Password:	
ate	Confirm password:	
LT LT	Note: The default username and password for iServer Management Console is:	
Ac	Uaername: Administrator Password: (no password)	
InstallShield	< Back Next >	Cancel

Figure 5-12 Specifying the password for using Configuration Console

**12** If you chose to install Management Console in step 5, complete the following steps:

- 1 Specify the following information, as shown in Figure 5-13. Choose Next:
  - Host name and port number for the following items:
    - PMD (Process Management Daemon) Configuration
    - iServer Configuration
  - Default volume name

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setu	Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup	
Management Console Config Please specify configuration for	<b>uration</b> r Server and Process Management Daemon.	
Actuate DPC	PMD Configuration         Enter the host name and port number that the Actuate Management Console should use to contact the PMD.         Host name/IP address:       urup         Port number:       8100         Server Configuration       Enter the host name and port number that the Actuate Management Console should use to contact the Server.         Host name/IP address:       urup         Port number:       8000         Default volume name:       urup	
InstallShield	< Back Next > Cancel	

 Figure 5-13
 Specifying the Management Console Configuration

2 In Actuate iServer Application Container, type the port number that the iServer Application Container uses, or accept the default port number, 8900, as shown in Figure 5-14. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setu Actuate iServer Application	p Container	×
Please specify Actuate iServer	Application Container information.	_
De	Specify the HTTP port that Actuate iServer Application Container should use.	
ate	Port number: 8900	
Actua		
InstallShield	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel	

Figure 5-14 Specify the port number for iServer Application Container

3 In Context Path, type the context path for Management Console or accept the default path, /acadmin, as shown in Figure 5-15. Choose Next.

Actuate BIRT iServer 11 Setup		X
Context Path		
Please specify context path.		
jer	Specify the context path for Management Console.	
Actuate	Context path: <mark>/acadmin</mark>	
InstallShield	< Back Next >	Cancel

Figure 5-15 Specifying the context path

4 In Select Program Folder, specify a folder name containing the iServer icons that are used to launch the consoles, or accept the default name, Actuate11, as shown in Figure 5-16. Choose Next.





**13** In Start Copying Files, review the settings shown in Figure 5-17. Choose Next to start copying files.



Figure 5-17 Reviewing settings before copying files

Setup Status displays an indicator showing how the installation is progressing, as shown in Figure 5-18.



Figure 5-18 Viewing setup status

**14** When the setup success message appears, as shown in Figure 5-19. Choose Finish to exit the wizard.



Figure 5-19 Exiting the installation wizard

**15** The installation program prompts you to install the online help from the following location:

http://www.actuate.com

Alternatively, you can install the online help and manuals in PDF format using the Actuate Localization and Online Documentation media. Figure 5-20 shows the prompt.

Actuate is	Actuate iServer - InstallShield Wizard		
Ū,	This product accesses online help from the recommended location, http://www.actuate.com. To install the online help and manuals in PDF format on your local system, use the "Actuate Localization and Online Documentation" installation media.		
	DK		

Figure 5-20 Viewing the install online help and manuals prompt

**16** If you chose to install Management Console in step 4, the installation program installs shortcuts on the desktop, as shown in Figure 5-21.



Figure 5-21 Viewing BIRT iServer shortcuts on the desktop

These shortcuts provide access to the following iServer components:

iServer Management Console

Launches Management Console to administer an Encyclopedia volume, set up user accounts, and run reports.

BIRT iServer 11

Opens Welcome to Actuate BIRT iServer from which you can log in to Information Console to perform tasks, such as accessing folders and viewing reports.

**17** The installation program automatically opens Configuration Console in a browser, as shown in Figure 5-22, for the administrator to complete the process of adding the node to the cluster. Log into Configuration Console and perform the steps described in "Adding a node to a cluster," later in this chapter.

7 ACTUATE S	ystern: Version: 11 Service Pack 3 (Build 110E111020)	
User name: Password: Language: Time zone:	Administrator English (United States) America/Los_Angeles Log In	

Figure 5-22 Logging in to Configuration Console

# Adding a node to a cluster

The Actuate BIRT iServer 11 service on Windows must be running on all cluster nodes. The nodes must communicate with each other over TCP/IP. If necessary, reconfigure your firewall to allow communication between the nodes. Figure 5-23 shows an example of a pre-existing cluster.

G Syst	Custom	Servers
	System	Start New Server
	Servers	Name Template Status Description Operating System and Version
		€ kozu urup ONLINE M F V C I Windows XP Professional 5.1 Service Pack 3
	Server	C urup Urup ONLINE M F V C I Windows XP Professional 5.1 Service Pack 3
	Configuration Templates	Legend
0		M Message Distribution Service F Factory Service V View Service
	Volumes	C Caching Service I Integration Service
8	Partitions	Changes pending require server restart to take effect
	Resource Groups	Check CPU Core Count
Ű	Printers	

Figure 5-23 Viewing the cluster configuration before adding a node

After installing a node as an iServer instance on a machine, the administrator must still add the node to the cluster. When adding a node to a cluster setup, the administrator must verify that the configuration home directory specified during

the install procedure points to the shared configuration home directory for the cluster and all Encyclopedia volume resources are accessible.

The cluster node must have shared, read-write access to the following system resources:

 AC\_DATA\_HOME\config, including any version-related subfolders on the primary node

In a Release 11 Service Pack 3 installation, the configuration files are located in AC\_DATA\_HOME\config\11SP3 by default.

 AC\_DATA\_HOME\encyc or other volumes, including all file, fileType, status, and tempRov subfolders

In an iServer installation, where there has been no activity on the system, the status or tempRov folders may not exist. These folders contain information about job details and completion notices and do not appear until a job executes.

The administrator must verify or edit the shared acpmdconfig.xml file to contain the following information:

- AC\_CONFIG\_HOME> to point to the shared configuration home directory for the cluster
- <AC\_TEMPLATE\_NAME> to specify the server template from the available server templates listed in the shared acserverconfig.xml file

#### How to verify and edit acpmdconfig.xml file settings

To verify and edit acpmdconfig.xml file settings, perform the following tasks:

- **1** Stop the Actuate BIRT iServer 11 service running on the recently installed cluster node.
- **2** Using a text editor, such as Notepad, open acpmdconfig.xml, which by default is located in AC\_SERVER\_HOME/etc.
- **3** Verify or edit <AC\_CONFIG\_HOME> to point to the shared configuration home directory for the cluster.

This location is the path that you specified for the configuration home directory during the install procedure, as shown in Figure 5-6. The configuration home location is the shared directory containing acserverconfig.xml, acserverlicence.xml, and acconfigowner.lock files for the cluster. The administrator should specify the location using the Universal Naming Convention (UNC) Format.

In a Release 11 Service Pack 3 installation, the configuration files are located in AC\_DATA\_HOME\config\11SP3 by default. If the shared configuration folder is in this default location on a server named urup, then the

administrator should specify  $\ 11SP3$  as the path, as shown in Listing 5-1.

- **4** Verify or edit <AC\_TEMPLATE\_NAME>, shown in Listing 5-1, to specify the server template name from the available server templates listed in the shared acserverconfig.xml file, shown in Listing 5-2.
- 5 Save acpmdconfig.xml.

#### Listing 5-1 acpmdconfig.xml

```
< PMDConfig>
  <!--Actuate system Type -->
  <System>Cluster</System>
  <Mode>Default</Mode>
  <PMDConfigFileVersion>2</PMDConfigFileVersion>
  <!--Daemon SOAP endpoint information -->
  <DaemonSOAPPort>8100</DaemonSOAPPort>
  <!-- Disk Thresholds are in MB -->
  <MinDiskThreshold>100</MinDiskThreshold>
  <LowDiskThreshold>300</LowDiskThreshold>
  <!--Server information -->
  <Server>
     <Startup>Manual</Startup>
     <AC_TEMPLATE_NAME>urup</AC_TEMPLATE_NAME>
     <AC DATA HOME>C:\Actuate\iserver\data</AC DATA HOME>
     <AC CONFIG HOME>\\urup\11SP3</AC CONFIG HOME>
     <AC JRE HOME>
        C:\Program Files\Common Files\Actuate\11.0\JDK160\jre
     </AC JRE HOME><AC JRE64 HOME/>
     <AC JAVA HOME>
        C:\Program Files\Common Files\Actuate\11.0\JDK160
     </AC JAVA HOME>
     <AC ODBC HOME>
        C:\Program Files\Common Files\Actuate\11.0\odbc
     </AC ODBC HOME>
     <AC SERVER IP ADDRESS>urup</AC SERVER IP ADDRESS>
     <AC SOAP DISPATCH ADDRESS>urup</AC SOAP DISPATCH ADDRESS>
     <AC DOC BASE>
       http://www.actuate.com/documentation/R11SP3
     </AC DOC BASE>
     <AC ICU DATA>
       C:\Program Files\Actuate11SP3\iServer\bin
     </AC ICU DATA>
  </Server>
  <!-- Servlet Container information -->
  <ServletContainer>
     <Startup>Auto</Startup>
     <JavaOpts
```

The administrator must also verify or edit the shared acserverconfig.xml file to contain the following information:

- <ServerFileSystemSetting> points to the shared drive location that contains the Encyclopedia volume data files
- server <ConnectionProperty> specifies the network name of the node that contains the shared Encyclopedia volume database

#### How to verify and edit acserverconfig.xml file settings

To verify and edit acserverconfig.xml file settings, perform the following tasks:

- **1** Stop the Actuate BIRT iServer 11 service running on the cluster node that contains the shared configuration home directory.
- **2** Using a text editor, such as Notepad, open the acserverconfig.xml file in the configuration home directory.

The configuration home directory is the shared directory on the node that contains the acserverconfig.xml, acserverlicence.xml, and acconfigowner.lock files for the cluster. In a Release 11 Service Pack 3 installation, the configuration files are located in AC\_DATA\_HOME\config\11SP3 by default. The location is the path that you specified for the configuration home directory during the install procedure, as shown in Figure 5-6.

**3** In <Template> settings for the node, verify or edit <ServerFileSystemSettings> to make sure that it points to the location that contains the Encyclopedia data files, as shown in Listing 5-2.

In Listing 5-2, the Path setting for DefaultPartition is \$AC\_DATA\_HOME\$/ encyc.

- **4** In <MetadataDatabase> settings, verify or edit the <ConnectionProperty> for the server to make sure that it specifies the network name, not localhost, of the node on which the Encyclopedia volume database resides, by performing the following tasks:
  - 1 Locate the <ConnectionProperties> element under the <MetadataDatabase> element.
  - **2** In <ConnectionProperties> locate:

```
<ConnectionProperty
Name="server"
Value="localhost"/>
```

3 Change Value from localhost to the name of the machine on which the Encyclopedia volume database resides, such as urup, as shown in the following code:

```
<ConnectionProperty
Name="server"
Value="urup"/>
```

**5** Save acpmdconfig.xml.

#### Listing 5-2 acserverconfig.xml

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="no"?>
<Config>
  . . .
  <Templates>
     <Template
        Name="urup"
        PMDPort="8100"
        ActuateBuild="110E111020"
        ActuateVersion="11 Service Pack 3"
         ServerSOAPPort="11100"
        AppContainerPort="8900"
        RequesterRSAPIVolume="corp">
        <ReportingService
           EnableGenerationService="true"/>
        <SOAPDispatchService
           EnableRequestService="true"
           SOAPDispatchSOAPPort="8000"/>
        <ViewingService
           EnableRender="false"
           EnableViewingService="true"/>
        <IntegrationService
           EnableIntegrationService="true"/>
        <CachingService
           EnableCachingService="true"/>
        <ServerFileSystemSettings>
          <ServerFileSystemSetting
              Name="DefaultPartition"
              Path="$AC DATA HOME$/encyc"/>
        </ServerFileSystemSettings>
```

Start the Actuate BIRT iServer 11 service on the nodes. The new cluster node will automatically read the settings in the acserverconfig.xml file in the shared configuration home directory to access its template, then join the cluster, as shown in Figure 5-25.

#### How to start an iServer cluster using Configuration Console

To start iServer using Configuration Console, perform the following tasks:

- 1 On the node containing the configuration home directory for the cluster, log in to Configuration Console and choose Advanced view. Choose Servers, then choose Start New Server.
- **2** On Servers—Start New Server, as shown in Figure 5-24, perform the following tasks:
  - 1 In Server name, type the name of the cluster node.
  - **2** In Host Name or IP Address, type the name or IP address of the cluster node.
  - 3 In iServer Process Manager Port Number, type the Daemon listen port number. The default value for this port is 8100. You specify this port number during the install procedure, as shown in Figure 5-24.
  - 4 In Server template name, choose the name of the template that the cluster node uses.

Servers > Start New Server				
Server name:	kazu	]		
Host Name or IP Address:	kazu	tec		
iServer Process Manager Port Number:	8100	tec		
Server template name:	urup 💌	l∗ec		
* These fields are required and cannot be l ₽ C These fields require server restart to	eft blank take effect			
			OK	Cancel

Choose OK.

Figure 5-24 Preparing to start a new server

- **3** Log out of Configuration Console.
- **4** Restart the Actuate BIRT iServer 11 services on the node containing the configuration home directory for the cluster then the new node.
- **5** Log in to Configuration Console and choose Advanced view. Choose Servers from the side menu. The new cluster node automatically reads the acserverconfig.xml in the shared configuration home directory to access its template, then joins the cluster, as shown in Figure 5-25.

Sustam	Servers			
System	Start New Server			
Servers	Name         Template         Status         Description         Operating System and Version			
	€ kozu urup ONLINE M F V C I Windows XP Professional 5.1 Service Pack 3			
Server	€ kazu urup ONLINE M F V C I Windows XP Professional 5.1 Service Pack 3			
Configuration Templates	Urup Urup ONLINE M F V C I Windows XP Professional 5.1 Service Pack 3			
	Legend			
Volumes	M Message Distribution Service F Factory Service V View Service			
	C Caching Service I Integration Service			
Partitions	Changes pending require server restart to take effect			
Groups	Check CPU Core Count			
Printers				

Figure 5-25Viewing the cluster configuration after adding a node

# 6

# Installing BIRT iServer in a cloud

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Understanding a BIRT iServer cloud deployment
- Preparing to deploy BIRT iServer in a cloud environment

# Understanding a BIRT iServer cloud deployment

A cloud deployment in the BIRT iServer environment has the following features:

Easy-to-prepare, stateless iServer image

This image of an installed iServer run-time environment does not require modification during installation or the life time of the instance. The administrator can create a customized image by generating an archive of an installed iServer run-time environment. Alternatively, an out-of-the-box (OOTB) image is available as a separate iServer distribution package for Windows. The administrator deploys the image by unbundling the archive or installing a virtual image on the target machine.

Ready-to-launch iServer instance

Launching an iServer instance requires minimal work. After configuring the appropriate environment variables, the administrator launches the deployed iServer image from the command line by passing the necessary arguments or creates a script that executes the commands.

Elastic iServer clustering

The use of a ready-to-launch iServer image simplifies iServer cluster installation and management. Nodes with the same cluster ID, running on the same sub-net, automatically detect and join each other to form the cluster. The cluster automatically detects the on-off status of any node. Single-point node failure does not affect the availability of the other nodes.

In Release 11 and earlier, iServer used multicasting to broadcast event information and synchronize operations in a cluster. Some cloud computing environments do not support multicasting. In Release 11 Service Pack 1, iServer uses the third-party RDBMS as a shared repository for storing cluster information. This enhancement replaces multicasting as a way of managing cluster information.

For more information on setting up a cluster after performing a cloud deployment of a stand-alone iServer installation, see Chapter 6, "Installing a BIRT iServer cluster," earlier in this book, and Chapter 9, "Clustering," in *Configuring BIRT iServer*.

# Preparing to deploy BIRT iServer in a cloud environment

In an Actuate cloud deployment, a stateless iServer image contains only the runtime environment. The administrator typically transfers the image of the iServer run-time environment using a compressed archive, such as a ZIP or TAR file, or virtual image, unbundling the image on the target machine.

In addition, the administrator must install a supported version of the JAVA SE Development Kit (JDK) 1.6 (32-bit) or earlier. The JDK can be downloaded from http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/index.html if it is not already installed on the machine.

In Windows, the deployment script automatically installs the following prerequisite Microsoft Visual C++ Libraries. These libraries ship with the iServer distribution package in AC\_SERVER\_HOME/prerequisites. You can also download these resources from Microsoft, and manually install them.

In a 32-bit environment:

- Microsoft Visual C++ 2005 SP1 Redistributable Package (x86) vcredist\_vs2005\_x86.exe
- Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Packages (x86) vcredist\_x86.exe

In a 64-bit environment:

■ Microsoft Visual C++ 2005 Redistributable Package (x64) - vcredist\_x64.exe.

If you have an earlier version of BIRT iServer installed on your machine, such as Release 10 Service Pack 1, you can continue to run the earlier version, but not simultaneously with the new version. If the earlier version uses the same default ports, you must shut down the earlier version during the deployment process. The earlier version must remain shut down when the newly installed iServer is running. Reconfigure the ports for one version to run both versions at the same time.

The iServer Release 11 distribution package also contains the portmapper components required to run an Actuate e.Report, but the portmapper must be started manually using iServer/bin/portinst.exe. If the Actuate e.Reports option is enabled by a license key, iServer looks for the portmapper when it starts. If the portmapper is unavailable, iServer shuts down gracefully after a timeout, writing an appropriate error message to the logs. If the Actuate e.Reports option is not enabled by the license key, an attempt to run an e.Report fails gracefully. iServer does not look for the presence of the portmapper.

In an iServer Release 11 configuration, Actuate recommends storing iServer data in a directory located outside the iServer run-time environment. In a default Windows setup performed using the wizard-based install program, the iServer run-time environment installs in the following directory:

C:\Program Files\Actuate11\iServer

The data installs in the following directory:

C:\Actuate11\iServer\data

In a default Linux or UNIX setup, the iServer run-time environment installs in the following directory:

\$HOME/AcServer

The data installs in the following directory:

\$HOME/AcServer/data

## Deploying an iServer distribution package

To extract the iServer run-time resources, configure the run-time environment, start iServer, and perform the following tasks:

- 1 Create a new folder titled Actuate 11 in a directory location outside of C:\ Program Files or C:\Program Files( x86).
- **2** Extract the contents of ActuateBIRTiServer.zip to the folder created in the previous step.

In the iServer Release 11 configuration, the setting for the environment variable, AC\_SERVER\_HOME, specifies the location of the iServer binaries. The variable AC\_JAVA\_HOME specifies the location of the JDK.

- **3** To specify the location of AC\_SERVER\_HOME and AC\_JAVA\_HOME in the startiServer script, perform the following tasks:
  - 1 Using the text editor, open startiServer script located in the directory where you deployed BIRT iServer 11.
  - 2 Specify the path to the AC\_SERVER\_HOME and AC\_JAVA\_HOME on your machine, as shown in Listing 6-1.
  - **3** Save and close the file.

Listing 6-1 startiServer script

```
@echo off
REM Script that sets up the iServer and starts the iServer
cls
Title Actuate BIRT iServer 11 setup and start script for
    evaluation
setlocal enabledelayedexpansion
set AC_SERVER_HOME=C:\Actuate11\iServer
set AC_JAVA_HOME=C:\JDK160\bin
...
```

- **4** From the Windows menu, choose Start→Run.
- 5 Open a command prompt by typing cmd, and choose OK.

- **6** Navigate to the folder where you extracted the iServer package.
- 7 Type startiServer, and press Enter to execute the script.
- **8** The script determines the settings and paths for the environment variables that iServer uses to locate data and run-time resources.

The script installs the pre-requisite C++ runtime components, sets up the iServer deployment files, creates the iServer Encyclopedia volume, starts the PostgreSQL database system used to store Encyclopedia volume metadata, and finally starts BIRT iServer 11.

The deployment script asks whether to upload the Encyclopedia volume samples, as shown in Figure 6-1. Type 'y' and press Enter. Alternatively, type 'n' to skip this step. If you do not automatically upload the Encyclopedia volume samples in this step, you can upload these objects later.



Figure 6-1 Running startiServer script

**9** When the script starts iServer, a new command prompt window opens to serve as a console from which iServer can be shut down and restarted, as shown in Figure 6-2.



#### Figure 6-2 Viewing BIRT iServer 11 console

You can now make modifications to iServer parameters and server templates, create an archive of the iServer folder to replicate, and rapidly re-deploy the newly modified version in a cloud computing environment. For more information about configuring a cluster, see Chapter 6, "Installing a BIRT iServer cluster," earlier in this book, and Chapter 9, "Clustering," in *Configuring BIRT iServer*.

In Windows, the deployment program installs shortcuts to the folder where you extracted the BIRT iServer deployment package. These shortcuts provide access to the following iServer components:

BIRT iServer 11 Information Console

Launches the Information Console for viewing report documents

BIRT iServer 11 Management Console

Launches Management Console for setting up user accounts and scheduling reports

To access Configuration Console to administer iServer after starting the system, open a browser and enter the following URL, as shown in Figure 6-3:

http://localhost:8900/acadmin/config/

Actuate iServer System Configuration Console - Windows Internet Explorer		-OX
🚱 🕞 👻 http://localhost.8900/acadmin/config/	🔽 🄄 🗙 Google	P -
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help		
🔝 🎲 🔣 Actuate iServer System Configuration Console	🟠 • 🗟 • 🖶 • 🔂 Pa	ge 🔹 💮 Tools 🔹 🎽
ACTUATE System: kozu Version: 11		
User name: Administrator		
Password:		
Language: English (United States)	•	
Time zone: America/Los_Angeles	<b>•</b>	
Log In		

#### Figure 6-3 Logging into Configuration Console

To access Management Console to administer the Encyclopedia volume after starting the system, use the provided BIRT iServer 11 Management Console shortcut. Alternatively you can open a browser and enter the following URL, as shown in Figure 6-4:

http://localhost:8900/acadmin/

Actuate iServer Management Console - Windows Internet Explorer		٦×
G → Image: http://localhost.8300/acadmin/	🔽 47 🗙 Google 🖉	• •
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help		
🔂 🕸 😹 Actuate iServer Management Console	🟠 🔹 🔜 👻 🖶 🔹 🔂 Page 🔹 🚫 Tools	• »
7 ACTUATE System: kozu Version 11		
Log in to system (Online)		
Volume: kozu	<b>•</b>	
User name: Administrator		
Password:		
Language: English (United States)	<u> </u>	
Time zone: America/Los_Angeles		
Log In		



#### How to start and stop BIRT iServer

To start iServer, perform the following tasks:

- 1 Open a command prompt and navigate to the folder where you deployed BIRT iServer.
- **2** Type startiServer and choose Enter to execute the startup script. A new command window opens, entitled Actuate BIRT iServer 11. The first window must remain open, since the PostgreSQL service runs from this window.
- **3** After iServer starts, a browser window to Information Console opens automatically.

To stop iServer, perform the following tasks:

- 1 In the command prompt entitled Actuate BIRT iServer 11, type 's' and choose Enter to shut down iServer. The window closes automatically after iServer shuts down.
- 2 After iServer shuts down, close the main command prompt window.

#### How to manually upload Encyclopedia samples

You can upload the Encyclopedia samples at any time, by performing the following tasks:

- **1** If BIRT iServer is running, stop it using the steps described in Starting and stopping BIRT iServer.
- 2 Run the startiServer deployment script.
- **3** When the deployment program asks whether you would like to upload sample content into the Encyclopedia volume, type 'y' and press Enter.
- **4** The deployment program uploads the sample content and opens Information Console.

# Specifying AC\_SERVER\_HOME

In iServer Release 11, the location of binary files changes to consolidate these resources in AC\_SERVER\_HOME to facilitate creating an iServer image for deployment in a cloud environment.

The following DLLs, previously installed in WINDOWS\system32 by earlier iServer versions, are now installed in AC\_SERVER\_HOME\bin directory:

- acxerces-c\_1\_4\_90.dll
- msvcp90.dll
- LTDIS10N.dll
- ltfil10N.DLL
- msvcr71.dll
- acicudt18.dll

- ltkrn10N.dll
- msvcr90.dll
- acr7790w.dll
- mfc90u.dll
- msvcrt.dll
- acrs11090.dll

The following binaries, previously installed in AC\_SERVER\_HOME\operation by iServer earlier versions, are now installed AC\_SERVER\_HOME\bin directory:

- viewsrv11.exe
- fctsrvr11.exe
- fctcmd11.exe
- xmlparse.dll

The following directories, previously installed under Actuate product home, the parent directory of AC\_SERVER\_HOME, are now installed under AC\_SERVER\_HOME directory:

- \$AC\_PRODUCT\_HOME/jar
- \$AC\_PRODUCT\_HOME/MyClasses
- \$AC\_PRODUCT\_HOME/oda

# Specifying AC\_DATA\_HOME

iServer Release 11 introduces a new environment variable, AC\_DATA\_HOME, for specifying the location of iServer data files. AC\_DATA\_HOME separates iServer data from the run-time binaries. This change facilitates deployment in a cloud environment.

In an iServer Release 11 product installation, the following data files move to the AC\_DATA\_HOME directory:

- AC\_SERVER\_HOME/log
- ACTUATE\_HOME/oda/ais/log
- AC\_SERVER\_HOME/postgresql/log
- AC\_SERVER\_HOME/server/encyc
- AC\_SERVER\_HOME/server/encyc/postgresql
- AC\_SERVER\_HOME/tmp
- AC\_SERVER\_HOME/etc/acserverconfig.xml and acserverlicense.xml

Other XML configuration files, which are read-only, remain in AC\_SERVER\_HOME/etc.

7

# Installing Information Console

This chapter discusses the following topics:

- Preparing to install Information Console
- Installing Information Console on Windows

# **Preparing to install Information Console**

Before installing Information Console, you must prepare the operating system environment to ensure that you have all the necessary software and configuration resources in place. This section describes how to prepare the environment before starting the Information Console installation process.

## About installing from an FTP download

If you download an Actuate product from the Actuate FTP site, keep all the files together in their original relative locations when you extract them. The installation program verifies that all necessary files are present before installing Information Console.

If any files are missing, the installation program exits. Files can be missing if you download the DVD image, extract the files, move only some of the files to a new location, and attempt to install from that location.

# About performing a full installation

In Actuate 11, perform installations of Actuate iServer System products in the following order:

- Actuate BIRT iServer
- Actuate Information Console
- Actuate BIRT iServer Integration Technology

Actuate iServer installs Configuration, Management, and Information Console automatically on the machine where it resides. Typically, a manual Information Console installation is done to provide network access to iServer from a remote machine.

To access online documentation, such as the online help and PDF files of the product manuals, you must install the documentation files, which are on the documentation DVD that ships with your Actuate Software.

# Installing Information Console on Windows

This section describes how to install Actuate Information Console Release 11 for Windows. Before you begin the installation process, ensure that you have Actuate administrator, system administrator, and web administrator privileges.

Information Console installation requires the following information:

- The application server and port to use. The default settings are the Apache Tomcat for Actuate Information Console 11 service and port 8700, which the installation program configures. You must configure any other application server. If you are using a firewall, ensure that the firewall allows access to the port number you select.
- The installation wizard installs a Java Development Kit (JDK) distribution and a Java Runtime Environment (JRE) that the Apache Tomcat for Actuate Information Console 11 service uses.
- The name of the Encyclopedia volume that Information Console accesses. The default is the current machine.

You can install Information Console in two ways:

Using an installation wizard

The installation wizard configures Information Console, creates shortcuts, and extracts and installs all necessary files. The installation wizard configures Apache Tomcat for Actuate Information Console 11 service.

Deploying a WAR (web archive) file

Deploying directly requires that you configure for the application server. Use this option if your application server supports configuration of an application from a WAR file.

## Using the installation wizard

The following section describes how to install Information Console using the installation wizard.

#### How to install using the wizard

1 If you downloaded iServer, run the ActuateInformationConsole.exe file. If you have a DVD or ftp distribution, run setup.exe in the Information Console directory. The welcome message appears, as shown in Figure 7-1. Choose Next.





2 Read and accept the license agreement, as shown in Figure 7-2. Choose Next.



Figure 7-2 Accepting the license agreement

**3** In Setup Type, select Typical, as shown in Figure 7-3. Choose Next.



Figure 7-3 Specifying the typical or custom setup type

**4** In Locale Information, choose Next to accept the default language and time zone, as shown in Figure 7-4, or specify these settings for your region.

Actuate Information Console 11 Setup			
Locale Information Please specify default locale information. This will be used as the default for all users. Users can change these values when they log in.			
้อเ	Specify the language and time zone for the current install.		
	Language: English (United States)	]	
Actuate	Time zone: America/Los_Angeles (America/Los_Angeles) 👱	]	
InstallShield	Cancel		

Figure 7-4 Specifying locale information

**5** In Apache Tomcat for Actuate Information Console Service, accept the default port, 8700, and context path, /iportal, as shown in Figure 7-5. Choose Next.

Actuate Information Console 11 Setup				
Apache Tomcat for Actuate Information Console Service				
Please specity Apache Tomca	Please specify Apache Tomcat for Actuate Information Console service information			
Actuate	Specify the HTTP port that the Apache Tomcat for Actuate Information Console service should use. You will connect to this port with your browser when accessing the service. Port number: <u>8700</u> Specify the context path for Information Console. Context path: <u>/portal</u>			
InstallShield	< Back Next > Cancel			

Figure 7-5 Specifying the port number and context path

**6** In Specify Windows Account Information, type the user name and password for the account used to run the Apache Tomcat for Information Console 11 service, as shown in Figure 7-6. Choose Next.

Actuate Information Console 1	1 Setup X		
Specify Windows Account Information Specify Windows account information for running Apache Tomcat for Information Console Service.			
je.	Specify the Windows account information that will be used to run the Apache Tomcat for Actuate Information Console Service. For system security you should consider creating a special account to run this service.		
	-Windows Account Information-		
	Password:		
lat	Confirm password:		
5			
A A			
InstallShield	<back next=""> Cancel</back>		



7 In iServer Information, accept the default values for Profile name, Host name, and Port number, as shown in Figure 7-7. Alternatively, type a different value for one or more of these properties. In Volume name, type a name for the default Encyclopedia volume. Choose Next.

Actuate Information Console 1	1 Setup		X
iServer Information Enter iServer information.			
้อม	Enter the default profile name, hos contact the iServer.	st name and port number that Information Console sh	ould use to
	Profile Properties		
	Profile name:	irup	
يو )	Host name:	nup	
lai	Port number: 8	1000	
F	Volume name:	orp	
Ă			
InstallShield	< <u>B</u> ack	Next >	Cancel

Figure 7-7 Specifying values for iServer profile properties

8 In Start Copying Files, review the settings shown in Figure 7-8. Choose Next.



Figure 7-8 Reviewing settings before copying files

Setup Status displays an indicator showing how the installation is progressing, as shown in Figure 7-9.





**9** Select I would like to view the ReadMe file, as shown in Figure 7-10, if you want to review this documentation. Choose Finish to exit the wizard.



Figure 7-10 Exiting the installation wizard
If you chose to view the ReadMe file, the installation program opens the document, as shown in Figure 7-11.



Figure 7-11 The ReadMe file

#### Using the WAR file to install

If Actuate supports your application server, you can deploy Information Console as a WAR file. See your application server documentation about how to deploy a WAR file. For information about application servers on which Actuate supports deployment of Information Console, see the Supported Products Matrix for this release on the Actuate Support site at the following URL:

http://support.actuate.com/documentation/spm

Customize Information Console for your local environment, if necessary, before beginning deployment. To customize the application for your local environment, follow the steps in "Preparing the WAR file," later in this section. Deploy the customized Information Console WAR file to the application server instead of ActuateInformationConsole.war on the installation DVD.

#### General deployment tasks

You must configure the Information Console WAR and application server for integration. You must also verify that you have a standard J2EE installation.

To integrate your application server with Actuate, complete the following tasks:

- Configure the application server to operate with Actuate products.
- Configure the Information Console WAR to integrate with the application server as described in "Preparing the WAR file."
- Deploy Information Console to the application server.
  - If the application server has deployment tools, use those tools to integrate the application server with Actuate products. For more information about deployment tools, see your application server's documentation.
  - If your application server does not have deployment tools, add the Actuate context root to your application server, typically by modifying the application server's configuration file.

#### Preparing the server

Actuate recommends the following configuration for best performance:

- Use at least a two-CPU machine for Information Console.
- If Actuate iServer System uses more than four CPUs, configure one CPU for Information Console for every two CPUs that iServer uses.

Set the following configuration values on the application or web server:

- On a machine with 1 GB of physical memory, set the Java heap size to a value between 256 MB and 512 MB.
- Set the number of threads to a value between 50 and 75.

#### Preparing the WAR file

You can use a WAR (web archive) file to deploy Information Console to many supported servers. Table 7-1 describes the Information Console configuration parameters to review and update before deployment.

Parameter name	Description	Action
BIRT _RESOURCE _PATH	The location of the standard templates and properties files that BIRT Studio uses. This location can be in a WAR file or on a disk.	If you specify a location on disk, copy the contents of the Information Console resources folder to this physical location on the file system.
DEFAULT _LOCALE	The default locale is en_US. You can leave this value unchanged. A user can select a locale at login.	If you change the locale, select the new locale from the locales in /WEB-INF/Localemap.xml.

 Table 7-1
 Information Console configuration parameters

Parameter name	Description	Action
DEFAULT _TIMEZONE	The default time zone is Pacific Standard Time (PST). You can leave this value unchanged. A user can select a time zone at login.	If you change the time zone, select the new time zone from the time zones in the TimeZones.xml file, in the WEB-INF directory.
SERVER _DEFAULT	This value specifies the iServer URL to which the Information Console application connects if you do not specify a server URL. The default value is http://localhost:8000	Update this value to the machine and port of the server. Change localhost to the iServer machine name or IP address. Change 8000 to the iServer port number.
DEFAULT _VOLUME	This value specifies the default Encyclopedia volume for Information Console. If you do not specify a volume in an Information Console URL, the JSP application attempts to log in to this volume. The default value is localhost.	Update this value to the name of an Encyclopedia volume.
BIRT_VIEWER _LOG_DIR	The location of the files that log Actuate BIRT viewer activity.	You must create this physical location on the file system.
LOG_FILE _LOCATION	The location of the files that log Information Console activity.	You must create this physical location on the file system.
TEMP_FOLDER _LOCATION	The location where Information Console creates temporary files.	You must create this physical location on the file system.
TRANSIENT _STORE_PATH	The location where Information Console creates temporary files.	You must create this physical location on the file system.

 Table 7-1
 Information Console configuration parameters (continued)

#### How to customize the WAR file

The following steps describe the general procedure for customizing an Information Console WAR file:

- **1** Insert the iServer System installation DVD.
- **2** Create a temporary directory, such as C:/Temp/ic.

If you use an existing directory, ensure that this directory is empty.

- **3** Open a command window and type the following commands, replacing the X: DVD drive letter with a drive letter appropriate to your system:
  - 1 Copy the WAR file to the temporary directory, as shown in the following example:

```
cd C:/Temp/ic
copy X:/ActuateInformationConsole.war .
```

2 Decompress the file, as shown in the following example:

jar -xf ActuateInformationConsole.war

The Information Console files appear in the temporary directory. Leave the Command window open.

**4** Using a text editor that accepts UTF-8 encoding, edit web.xml to configure Information Console for the application server.

If you used the temporary path in Step 3, the file location is C:/Temp/ic /WEB-INF/Web.xml. Refer to Table 7-1 for a list of entries to modify in web.xml.

- **5** Save and close web.xml.
- **6** Type the following command:

jar -cf ../newinformationconsole.war \*

This command creates newinformationconsole.war in the /temp directory. This new WAR file for Information Console contains the modified configuration values.

Use newinformationconsole.war to deploy Information Console to your application server.

#### About clusters of servers

If the application server supports clustering, see the application server documentation for more information about setting up clusters and deploying web applications such as Information Console.

#### Avoiding cache conflicts after installing

Information Console uses Java Server Page (JSP) technology. Application servers and browsers cache pages. A browser can use a cached copy of a page instead of the new page. After you install, using a cached copy of some pages can lead to errors or missing functionality.

To avoid this problem, clear the application server cache after you install Information Console. With some application servers, you must restart the application server. For more information about the necessary steps for clearing the cache, see the application server documentation.

If possible, also clear the browser cache to ensure that the browser does not use an old copy of the page from its cache. Alternatively, you can refresh recently visited pages or clear the browser cache if a problem occurs. For more information about clearing the browser's cache and refreshing a page, see the browser documentation.

#### Testing the installation

Complete the steps in the following section to test the Information Console installation.

#### How to test the installation

- 1 Start the Apache Tomcat for Actuate Information Console 11 service or the application server and web server, if necessary.
- 2 Start Information Console:
  - If you used the wizard installation, Choose Start→All Programs→ Actuate 11→Information Console.
  - If you used the deployment installation, type a URL in your web browser.
     For example, type a URL similar to the following example:

http://Actuate1:8900/iportal/getfolderitems.do ?repositoryType=Enterprise&volume=volume1&serverurl= http://iServer1:8000

where

- Actuate1:8900 is the name of your computer and the port you use to access Information Console.
- iportal is the context root for Information Console.
- ? indicates the beginning of a parameter that indicates where to access Information Console files.
- getfolderitems.do is the call to the default Information Console home page.
- repositoryType=Enterprise indicates that this Information Console connects to iServer.
- &volume=volume1&serverurl=http://iServer1:8000 specifies the Encyclopedia volume and the URL to the BIRT iServer.

The Information Console login page appears.

- **3** On the Information Console login page, type a user name and password. Accept the default settings in Encyclopedia Volume, Language, and Time zone.
- 4 Choose Log In.

# 8

# Installing iServer Integration Technology and Documentation

This chapter discusses the following topics:

- Installing iServer Integration Technology
- Installing the localization and documentation files

#### Installing iServer Integration Technology

This section describes how to install iServer Integration Technology for Windows. In a default installation, iServer Integration Technology installs in C:\ Program Files\Actuate11\ServIntTech.

#### How to install

To install iServer Integration Technology, perform the following tasks:

1 If you downloaded iServer Integration Technology, run the ActuateiServerIntegrationTechnology.exe file. If you have a DVD or ftp distribution, run setup.exe in the iServer directory. The welcome message appears, as shown in Figure 8-1. Choose Next.



Figure 8-1 Viewing the welcome message

**2** Read and accept the license agreement, as shown in Figure 8-2. Choose Next.



#### Figure 8-2 Accepting the license agreement

**3** In Setup Type, shown in Figure 8-3, select Typical. Choose Next.



Figure 8-3 Selecting a typical installation

4 In Start Copying Files, review the settings shown in Figure 8-4. Choose Next.



Figure 8-4 Reviewing settings before copying files

Setup Status displays an indicator showing how the installation is progressing, as shown in Figure 8-5.



Figure 8-5 Viewing setup status

**5** When the setup success message appears, select I would like to view the ReadMe file, as shown in Figure 8-6, if you want to review this documentation. Choose Finish to exit the wizard.



Figure 8-6 Exiting the installation wizard

If you chose to view the ReadMe file, the installation process opens the document, as shown in Figure 8-7.

🗐 readme.ttf - WordPad	- II X
Eile <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew Insert Fgrmat <u>H</u> elp	
Aial 🗴 14 🗴 Western 🗴 🖪 🗾 🖾	
Release Notes Actuate Corporation products	1
The release notes identify known limitations and list customer-reported defects this release fixes. The Release Notes are available at: http://support.actuate.com/documentation/releasenotes	
Information about new features in this release is available at: http://support.actuate.com/documentation/newfeatures	•
For Help, press F1	<u> </u>

Figure 8-7 Viewing the ReadMe file

**6** The installation program prompts you to install the online help and manuals using the Actuate Localization and Online Documentation media, as shown in Figure 8-8.

Actuate i	Actuate iServer Integration Technology - InstallShield Wizard 🔀		
Ū,	This product accesses online help from the recommended location, http://www.actuate.com. To install the online help and manuals in PDF format on your local system, use the "Actuate Localization and Online Documentation" installation media.		
		ОК	
Figur	e 8-8	Viewing the install online help and manuals	

#### Installing the localization and documentation files

The information in the printed manuals is available as Adobe Acrobat PDF files and as a context-sensitive help system for Actuate products. After installing Actuate products, install the localization and documentation files.

Both localization and documentation resource file updates can become available between releases. The Actuate Localization and Online Documentation Update tool provides replacements and additional files for PDF documentation, contextsensitive help, and localization of installed Actuate products. The tool is available from the following Actuate web site:

#### http://support.actuate.com/documentation/releasenotes

Updates to documentation in PDF form are available from the following Actuate web sites:

http://support.actuate.com/documentation

http://www.actuate.com/docupdate11sp1/docupdate.html

If you do not see an update tool for your release on the Support site, no updates exist for the release.

#### How to install the localization and documentation files

To install the iServer localization and documentation files, perform the following tasks:

1 If you downloaded Actuate Localization and Documentation, run the ActuateLocalizationandOnlineDocumentation.exe file. If you have a DVD or ftp distribution, run setup.exe. The welcome message appears, as shown in Figure 8-9. Choose Next.



#### Figure 8-9 Viewing the welcome message

2 Read and accept the license agreement, as shown in Figure 8-10. Choose Next.



Figure 8-10 Accepting the license agreement

**3** In Setup Type, select Typical, as shown in Figure 8-11, or select Custom to specify a limited set of localization and documentation files. Choose Next.

Actuate Localization and Online Documentation - InstallShield Wizard		
Setup Type Please choose the setup type.		
21	Click the type of setup you prefer.	
	Or Typical Program installs the most common options. Recommended for most users.	
	Custom Choose the options to install. Recommended for advanced users.	
ate	Destination Folder — C:\Program Files\Actuate11\Manuals Browse	
tr		
AC		
InstallShield	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	_

Figure 8-11 Specifying typical or custom setup type

4 In Start Copying Files, review the settings shown in Figure 8-12. Choose Next.



Figure 8-12 Reviewing settings before copying files

Setup Status displays an indicator showing how the installation is progressing, as shown in Figure 8-13.



Figure 8-13 Viewing setup status

Setup completed successfully message appears, as shown in Figure 8-14. Choose OK.

Actuate I	ocalization and Online Documentation - InstallShield Wizard	X
Ū,	Setup completed successfully.	
	ОК	

Figure 8-14 Viewing successful setup message

#### About accessing online help

iServer supports accessing online help in following ways:

- Online from www.actuate.com.
   Use this option to ensure that you always have the latest documentation.
- Locally from the installed online localization and documentation files.
   Use this option if you do not have an internet connection.

#### How to switch between online help and local help

- 1 Choose Start→Programs→Actuate 11→Switch Help Location.
- **2** On docupdate, select either Use online help, or Use local help, as shown in Figure 8-15.



Figure 8-15 Selecting online or local help

Choose OK.

**3** Restart Actuate BIRT iServer Enterprise Service.

#### Searching PDF manuals using master-index.pdx

If you install the PDF version of the manuals, you can also use the Actuate Documents Catalog (master-index.pdx) to search for topics across the entire set of books.

#### How to search the Actuate Documents Catalog

- 1 Navigate to the ACTUATE\_HOME\Actuate11\Manuals directory. Open master-index.pdx.
- **2** On Search, in Where would you like to search?, select All PDF documents in, then choose the ACTUATE\_HOME\Actuate11\Manuals.
- **3** In What word or phrase would you like to search for?, enter the word or phrase. For example, type accessing online help, as shown in Figure 8-16.

- D ×

Figure 8-16 Specifying the search

Choose Search.

Search displays all occurrences of the word or phrase in the Actuate Documents Catalog.

**4** Select an item in the results list to display the documentation in Adobe Reader, as shown in Figure 8-17.

🕫 Inst	alling BIRT iServer for Windows - A	Adobe Reader	_ 🗆 ×
File Er	dit View Document Tools Window	Hep	×
10	Al +   4 - 4   6 / 300	□ ● ● 100% ▼   → 🔐 Find ▼	
	Bookmarks ×		
	🛛 + Options •		F
10	Ren R		
	Contents	Chapter 7	
0		Installing Information Console	
	Actuate BIRT iServer	Preparing to install Information Console	
	architecture	About installing from an FTP download	
	■ Installing BIRT (Sever ■ ■ Installing BIRT (Sever)	Installing Information Console on Windows	
	using an alternative	Using the installation wizard	
	database	Using the WAR file to install	
	Upgrading BIRT     iServer	Preparing the server	
	■ E Installing a BIRT	Preparing the WAR file	
	iServer cluster	About clusters of servers	
	■ Installing BIRT iServer in a cloud	Testing the installation	
	■▲ Installing Information	Chapter 8	
	Console	Installing iServer Integration Technology and Documentation	
	■ Installing iServer	Installing iServer Integration Technology	
	Technology and	Installing the localization and documentation files	
	Documentation	About accessing online help	
	Licensing BIRT iServer	V Search	
	■ Backing up an	Arrange Windows	L II
	Encyclopedia volume	Looking For:	L II
	⊕ ≜ Index	accessing online help in C:\Program Files\Actuate11\Manuals	L II
		2 documents with 6 instances	L II
		New Search	
		Para har	L II
		回想 Instaling DIRT Gerver for Linux and LINUX 国	
		Instaling BIRT IServer for Windows	
		About accessing online help	
		about accessing online help iServer supports accessing online help in following ways: ■ Online from www.	
		gupports accessing online help in following ways:  Online from www.actuate.com. Use this option	L II
		accessing online help x, xi, 215 archiving 239, 240 backing up 17, 82, 104, 238     accessing online help for 216 binding to an iticia core CELX 230 binding to proceeding 238	L II
		We we want of the process of the second	
		Sort by: Relevance Ranking 💌	
		Collapse file paths	
a		Refine Search Results	
r"		Use Basic Search Ontons	
5	, <u> </u>	Find a word in the current PDF document	
	× >		J 🚽

Figure 8-17 Viewing search results

# Part Three

Licensing

#### Chapter

# 9

# **Licensing BIRT iServer**

This chapter discusses the following topics:

- Working with licensing
- Understanding the licensing options
- About license files
- Understanding node-key licensing
- Obtaining the installation license key file
- Collecting machine information for a node-key license
- Installing the license key
- Understanding CPU binding

#### Working with licensing

BIRT iServer System licensing supports running BIRT iServer with sets of features grouped as license options. You enable BIRT iServer System options using either a Named User, Platform, or Work Unit License.

The following list describes the types of licenses:

Named User License

Specifies the maximum number of named users that can use an BIRT iServer System. A named user is a distinct individual who receives content and value from BIRT iServer.

In Release 11, a BIRT iServer administrator must specify the options that a user can access in an Encyclopedia volume. The administrator makes this specification by configuring the user Licensed Options properties in Management Console.

When you license an option, such as BIRT Option, e.Report Option, or BIRT Spreadsheet Option, the license entitles the user to access a single volume in BIRT iServer System. If the user needs additional Encyclopedia volumes for multiple applications, archiving, or other purposes, you must license the Multi-Tenant Option for each additional Encyclopedia volume the user needs to access.

Platform License

Specifies a hybrid model that supports combining Named User Licenses with CPU Licenses for Actuate end-user components and the BIRT iServer System infrastructure. In a multiple-CPU environment, Actuate typically uses the Standard Performance Evaluation Corporation (SPEC) standard benchmark, for measuring machine capacity based on CPU, memory, disk, and network capacity.

Work Unit (WU) License

Specifies iServer features and functionality using an aggregate model. This plan defines each iServer System resource as a work unit.

#### Understanding the licensing options

Table 9-1 lists and describes BIRT iServer System license options. BIRT iServer System options are separately licensed products. Some license options require

other options to be licensed before their functionality is available to users. Table 9-1 also describes these prerequisites.

 Table 9-1
 BIRT iServer System license options

Option	Description	Supported releases
Actuate Analytics	Allows building a cube and displaying a cube report for the purpose of multidimensional analysis. The Analytic Option enables BIRT iServer to extract data from a database and build a compressed OLAP file. When you analyze the cube, you can aggregate or categorize data, summarize data, and create graphs based on data. You can save and share views of the analysis you perform in the Encyclopedia volume.	10, 11
Actuate Query	Supports retrieving information using an information object.	10, 11
BIRT	Allows a user to publish and run a BIRT design using BIRT iServer. This option is a requirement for BIRT Page Level Security Option.	10, 11
BIRT 360	Allows a user to create, execute, and view dashboard files.	11
BIRT Data Analyzer	Allows a user to create, view, and modify cubeview files.	11
BIRT Interactive Viewer	Allows a user who has the BIRT Option to use BIRT Interactive Viewer to view and interact with a BIRT document.	10, 11
BIRT Page Level Security	Controls access to structured content available on the web. This option works for reports created using BIRT Designer Professional and requires the BIRT Option. Access privileges are based on user name or security role.	10, 11
BIRT SmartSheet Security	Controls access to structured content available on the web. This option works for reports created using BIRT Spreadsheet Designer and requires BIRT Spreadsheet Option. Access privileges are based on user name or security role.	10, 11
BIRT Spreadsheet	Allows a user to deploy and run a spreadsheet built using BIRT Spreadsheet Designer. This tool enables customers to save reports as richly formatted Excel spreadsheets and manage them in an Encyclopedia volume.	10, 11
BIRT Studio	Allows a user to create a BIRT design and to run it in BIRT iServer. BIRT Studio Option supports access to an information object on BIRT iServer System.	10, 11

(continues)

Option	Description	Supported releases
e.Analysis	Supports analysis of search results from an Actuate Basic report written in dynamic hypertext markup language (DHTML). This tool is available as an additional purchase with BIRT iServer and requires the e.Report (Actuate Basic Report) Option.	10, 11
e.Report (Actuate Basic Report)	Allows a user to deploy and run an e.report built using Actuate e.Report Designer Professional on an Encyclopedia volume. This option is a requirement for e.Analysis Option and e.Report Page Level Security Option.	10, 11
e.Report Page Level Security	Controls access to structured content available on the web. This option works for reports created using Actuate e.Report Designer Professional and requires the e.Report (Actuate Basic Report) Option. Access privileges are based on user name or security role.	10, 11
Information Object Caching	Provides the ability to cache data from an information object in a third-party database. This option requires separate licensing of a third party database server for data storage. This option is not available for an information object based on Actuate Basic technology.	10, 11
Multi-Tenant	Allows a BIRT iServer System user to access more than one Encyclopedia volume. This option is available with a Unlimited User CPU License.	10, 11

#### Table 9-1 BIRT iServer System license options (continued)

To determine the license options installed on iServer, log in to Configuration Console, and choose Show License. The license options appear, as shown in Figure 9-1.



Figure 9-1 iServer License options

#### About license files

Actuate provides a temporary BIRT iServer license key file to use for the initial installation. The temporary BIRT iServer System license key expires 45 days after installation. A design or document run using a temporary license appears with a watermark when viewed.

After installing BIRT iServer System, the customer must collect information about the system in which BIRT iServer is running and transmit the information to Actuate Licensing. After receiving this information, Actuate Licensing issues a new BIRT iServer System license key file.

This license key file specifies the available iServer license options and node-key information for the cluster nodes. This license file must be in a shared location, specified by the ConfigHomeDirectory variable in the acpmdconfig.xml file of each node, and accessible to all nodes in the cluster.

A node key associates an iServer node with the machine ID. The node-key licensing mechanism restricts the iServer node installation to that machine.

On startup, each node in the cluster checks the shared license file, verifies the installed options, and determines whether its node key, which is generated at runtime, matches the license information. If the node key matches, the node joins the cluster. Otherwise, it shuts down with an error if the node lock violation grace period has been exceeded.

When upgrading a cluster node or installing iServer on a new machine, the customer must request a new node-key file and supply the machine ID of the new machine.

#### About CPU binding

BIRT iServer System supports CPU-binding on a machine with an appropriate CPU-based license. CPU-binding restricts a process or processes to run on a subset of CPUs. If you bind the BIRT iServer System to a subset of CPUs, only those CPUs count toward the total number of licensed CPUs. The CPU limit in the license file applies to all CPUs for all machines in the cluster.

The following sections provide a detailed description of how the license key process works in Actuate Release 11.

#### Understanding node-key licensing

Actuate license enforcement for Release 11 requires a single, shared license key for all nodes in a cluster. You receive a temporary license key from Actuate Licensing when you purchase the product.

The name for the BIRT iServer license key file uses the following format:

Actuate\_iServer\_key\_xxxxx.xml

XXXXX is a unique five-digit number generated by Actuate Licensing when it creates the license key file.

The following sections describe the BIRT iServer System license installation process.

#### Obtaining the installation license key file

New customers receive an e-mail that contains the license key file information when Actuate processes the order. If you have a problem with a license key file, contact Actuate Licensing at licensing@actuate.com.

To obtain a new file for licensed products, visit the Support web site at:

http://support.actuate.com

A maintenance customer should have login information for the Actuate Support web site. If you do not have access, please contact Actuate Support at support@actuate.com If you are not a direct Actuate customer, the partner or distributor who provides the product arranges for your license key file. If you have a problem obtaining your license key file from this source, please contact Actuate Licensing at licensing@actuate.com.

A license key file can be an expiring file that is valid until a specific date. If your license key file is an expiring file, you are reminded that the file expires on a certain date when you log in to the Configuration or Management Consoles. Reminders also appear in the system log file. To arrange for a permanent license key file, or if you have a problem with an expiring file, please contact Actuate Licensing at licensing@actuate.com.

You can easily modify your decisions about Actuate license options by contacting Actuate Licensing. If you are an Actuate international customer, please be aware that the e-mail message sent to Actuate goes to Actuate headquarters, and we route your request to a team in the appropriate country.

#### Collecting machine information for a node-key license

After installing BIRT iServer System using the temporary license key file, you must collect information about the machine running this Actuate software and send it to Actuate Licensing. During the installation process, the InstallShield Wizard prompts you to provide the location of the

Actuate\_iServer\_key\_xxxx.xml file. After providing the location of the license key, the InstallShield Wizard issues a prompt similar to the following message:

- The iServer system license file is locked to the machines that are used in the iServer system. The following machine id must be used to request a node key license file from Actuate. 00-13-02-4e-3a-8e00-15-5a-2b-27-0fe0-16-ce-ec-43-52
- Please contact Actuate Licensing (licensing@actuate.com or http://www.actuate.com/licensing), or your representative, and request a node key file.
- The machine id required for the node key file can also be generated by using the acmachineid utility that can be found in the ACTUATE\_HOME\iServer\bin folder.

Press Enter to continue.

The format of the alphanumeric string for the machine ID and location of the node-key file are different depending on the operating system. On a Windows system, the unique identifier for the network card is the source of the machine ID. You must have the network card enabled on the BIRT iServer machine to obtain the machine ID.

Make a note of the machine ID in the installation prompt and send it to Actuate Licensing. Actuate Licensing processes your request and sends the new license key for BIRT iServer System.

You can also run the BIRT iServer utility, acmachineid, from the command line to generate the machine ID information as shown in the following Windows-based example:

```
STATUS: OK

GEN_VERSION: 11

GEN_BUILD: 10C081031

MACHINEID: 00-13-02-4e-3a-8e00-15-5a-2b-27-0fe0-16-ce-ec-43-52
```

The acmachineid utility is located in the bin folder of the BIRT iServer installation.

#### Installing the license key

After installing BIRT iServer System using the temporary license key, the login screen displays two messages.

The following message about expiration of the initial license key always appears on the login screen regardless of the node-key license status:

Reminder

Your BIRT iServer license expires in [the number of days] days, on [the specified date]. When the current license expires, the iServer will shut down and require a new license to restart. Please contact Actuate to purchase a new license.

The following message about how to obtain the second set of license keys from Actuate Licensing appears until you install the new license keys issued by Actuate Licensing:

Reminder

```
One or more iServers in your BIRT iServer System are in
violation of the node locked BIRT iServer license. After the
grace period expires, the iServers that violate the node locked
BIRT iServer license cannot be restarted. Please contact
Actuate Licensing (licensing@actuate.com or
http://www.actuate.com/licensing), or your representative, and
request a new license file for the iServer nodes that are in
violation. Please restart the iServers on the nodes after
updating the license key file.
```

You have 45 days to apply for and install the node-key license after you install BIRT iServer System.

#### How to install the license key file

To update the license key file, perform the following tasks:

1 Verify that the format of the Actuate\_iServer\_key\_XXXXX.xml license file name is correct.

An Actuate license key is an XML file. Actuate Licensing sends this XML file to you with an appended .txt file extension because transmitting a file with an .xml extension can cause problems in an e-mail system. You must remove the .txt extension from the file name before installing the license key file in the BIRT iServer System. Make sure that the file name contains the unique five-digit number generated by Actuate Licensing.

- **2** Copy the Actuate\_iServer\_key\_XXXXX.xml license file to the shared location specified by the ConfigHomeDirectory variable in the acpmdconfig.xml file of each node in the cluster.
- **3** Log in to Configuration Console. For example, type http://localhost:8900 /acadmin/config/ in Address of a browser, and use the system configuration password you specified during installation.
- 4 Choose Update License.
- **5** Navigate to the location of the new license key file and select the file. Choose OK.
- **6** Restart any node where the node-key configuration changed.

If you change the machine for a node in a BIRT iServer cluster, you must reapply to Actuate Licensing for a new license file. If you replace the network card on a machine, such as a Windows system, you may be required to obtain a new license file, since the unique identifier for the network card is the source of the machine ID. Use the acmachineid utility to obtain the machine ID information and transmit the new information to Actuate Licensing.

#### **Understanding CPU binding**

CPU binding can work only on a machine with an appropriate CPU-based license. CPU binding restricts a process or processes to run on a subset of CPUs. If you bind the BIRT iServer System to a subset of CPUs, only those CPUs count toward the total number of licensed CPUs. Depending on the operating system and specific system command, you can restrict other processes from running on the processor to which you bind a process.

You can bind BIRT iServer processes to a specific set of processors on a machine that runs a Windows, Sun Solaris, or HP-UX 11i operating system. The default configuration does not bind BIRT iServer to a set of processors. In the default configuration, all processors on a BIRT iServer machine count toward the maximum number of licensed CPUs. For more information about performing CPU binding on a Sun Solaris or HP-UX 11i machine, see Chapter 7, "Licensing BIRT iServer," in *Installing BIRT iServer for Linux and UNIX*.

To bind BIRT iServer to a set of processors, bind the Actuate Process Management Daemon (PMD) to the processors. The Actuate PMD starts all BIRT iServer processes. The processes inherit the binding from the Actuate PMD.

In a cluster, BIRT iServer counts only the processors on nodes that join the cluster and run the encycsrvr11 process. An encycsrvr11 process runs when a node is online. BIRT iServer counts the number of processors on a machine when the first encycsrvr11 process starts.

When deploying BIRT iServer on a machine with multi-threaded CPUs that use logical processors, the customer receives a license based on the number of physical processors in the system. To accommodate the use of logical processors, the customer receives a license key that specifies two or four times the number of physical processors.

This section contains information on the following topics:

- Binding a BIRT iServer to processors on a Windows machine
- Checking BIRT iServer bound processors
- Configuring e-mail for CPU license problems

## Binding a BIRT iServer to processors on a Windows machine

You can perform the following types of CPU binding on Windows:

- Binding to specific CPUs
- Binding to multiple-core CPUs
- Binding an Actuate process to a processor

The following sections describe these features.

#### Binding to specific CPUs

On a multiple-CPU machine running the Windows operating system, the server operating system assigns an ID number to each processor. Windows Task Manager lists the IDs of the available processors. The numbering starts at 0.

#### How to bind BIRT iServer to a set of processors

To bind BIRT iServer to a set of processors, perform the following steps:

1 Choose Start→Control Panel→System.

On System Properites, choose Advanced. Then select Environment Variables.

- **2** On Environment Variables, perform the following tasks:
  - 1 In System Variables, choose New.

- 2 On New System Variable, perform the following tasks:
  - 1 in Variable name, type:

AC\_PMD\_WINDOWS\_CPUS

2 In Variable value, specify the processors to which to bind BIRT iServer by typing a comma-separated list of integers. For example, to bind BIRT iServer to CPU 0, CPU 3, and CPU 4, type the following list:

0,3,4

New System Variable looks like Figure 9-2.

lew System Vari	able ?
Variable name:	AC_PMD_WINDOWS_CPUS
Variable value:	0,3,4
	OK Cancel
	JK Current
ystem variables —	
ystem variables — Variable	Value
ystem variables — Variable ComSpec	Value C:\WINDOWS\system32\cmd.exe
ystem variables – Variable ComSpec DEFLOGDIR	Value C:\WINDOWS\system32\cmd.exe C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Ap
ystem variables – Variable ComSpec DEFLOGDIR FP_NO_HOST_C	Value C:\WINDOW5\system32\cmd.exe C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Ap NO
ystem variables – Variable ComSpec DEFLOGDIR FP_NO_HOST_C ICU_DATA	Value C1\WINDOW5[system32]cmd.exe C1\Documents and Settings\All Users\Ap NO C.\WINDOW5[system32]
ystem variables	Value C:1WMDOW51system321cmd.exe C:10ccuments and Settings1All Users1Ap NO C:10WIDOW51system321 2
vstem variables — Variable ComSpec DEFLOGDIR FP_NO_HOST_C ICU_DATA NUMBER_OF_P	Value C:\WINDOWS\system32\cmd.exe C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Ap NO C:\WINDOWS\system32\ 2

Figure 9-2 Creating the AC\_PMD\_WINDOWS\_CPUS system variable

Choose OK. AC\_PMD\_WINDOWS\_CPUS appears in System variables, as shown in Figure 9-3.

Environment Variable	38	? ×			
User variables for Ac	User variables for Administrator				
Variable TEMP TMP	Value C:[Documents and Settings\Administrat C:[Documents and Settings\Administrat				
System variables	New Edit Delete				
Variable AC_PMD_WIND ComSpec DEFLOGDIR FP_NO_HOST_C ICU_DATA	Value 0,3,4 C:{WINDOW5{system32}cmd.exe C:{Documents and Settings\All Users\Ap NO C:{WINDOW5{system32}	▲ ▼			
	New Edit Delete				
	OK Can	cel			

Figure 9-3 Viewing the AC\_PMD\_WINDOWS\_CPUS system variable

On Environment Variables, choose OK. Then, on System Properties, choose OK.

You can verify the CPU binding by checking the Processor Affinity of the BIRT iServer process using Task Manager.

#### **Binding to multiple-core CPUs**

You can also perform multiple-core CPU binding, similar to the way you bind to a single CPU, using the AC\_PMD\_WINDOWS\_CPUS environment variable, as described in the previous section. To BIRT iServer, each core appears as a logical CPU.

For example, on a dual-core, 2-CPU system, setting the variable value to 0,1 binds BIRT iServer to both cores on the first CPU. Setting the variable value to 0,2 binds BIRT iServer to one core on each CPU. Setting the variable value to 0 binds BIRT iServer to one core on the first CPU.

Actuate does not recommend restricting BIRT iServer processing on a multiplecore CPU machine to one core for licensing purposes. BIRT iServer System achieves significant performance gains on a multiple-core CPU machine.

For example, BIRT iServer scales nearly perfectly from 1 to 2 cores and gets 50% better throughput on a dual-core system than on a 2-CPU system.

#### Binding an Actuate process to a processor

If you bind the BIRT iServer PMD to a subset of CPUs on a machine, you can also bind the Factory, View, Integration, and Caching processes to a specific CPU. Under some conditions, binding an Actuate process to a specific CPU can enhance performance. Binding an Actuate process to a CPU has no affect on the CPU calculations BIRT iServer performs to determine the maximum number of licensed CPUs.

If you bind a process to a CPU, you must bind the CPU to both the BIRT iServer PMD and the process. BIRT iServer writes to the error log and stops the process if you bind a process to a CPU that you do not bind to the PMD.

To bind a BIRT iServer process to CPU processors, use the ProcessorAffinity element in the acserverconfig.xml file for BIRT iServer. List the IDs for the CPUs to which to bind a process as Item subelements in the following ProcessorAffinity elements:

- To bind Factory processes, specify the CPU IDs in the ProcessorAffinity element within the ReportingService element.
- To bind View processes, specify the CPU IDs in the ProcessorAffinity element within the ViewingService element.
- To bind Integration processes, specify the CPU IDs in the ProcessorAffinity element within the IntegrationService element.

• To bind Caching processes, specify the CPU IDs in the ProcessorAffinity element within the CachingService element.

You must also ensure that you bind the specified CPUs to the PMD for the BIRT iServer machine. For example, on a 4-CPU machine, the following ProcessorAffinity example binds View processes to CPU IDs 0 and 2:

```
<ViewingService
EnableViewingService="true"
<ProcessorAffinity>
<Item>0</Item>
<Item>2</Item>
</ProcessorAffinity>
/>
```

#### About processors and hyperthreading

Some Intel processors use hyperthreading, a technology that counts each physical processor as a specific number of logical processors. The operating system and any programs running on the machine see the number of logical processors, not the number of physical processors.

When a machine uses hyperthreading, Windows Task Manager lists the logical processors, not the physical ones. You specify the number of logical processors in the environment variable. When a machine uses hyperthreading, BIRT iServer calculates the number of bound processors by dividing the number of bound logical processors by the number of logical processors for each physical processor. If the result contains a decimal component, BIRT iServer uses the next highest integer. For example, it rounds 4.3 to 5. In the following example, a machine has four physical processors. With hyperthreading enabled, each physical processor corresponds to two logical processors. The machine has the following logical processors available:

- Physical processor 0 corresponds to logical processors 0 and 1.
- Physical processor 1 corresponds to logical processors 2 and 3.
- Physical processor 2 corresponds to logical processors 4 and 5.
- Physical processor 3 corresponds to logical processors 6 and 7.

If you bind BIRT iServer to the five logical processors 0, 2, 3, 6, and 7, it calculates the number of bound processors as:

5/2 = 2.5

BIRT iServer rounds this number up to determine that you have three bound processors.

#### **Checking BIRT iServer bound processors**

BIRT iServer performs the following bound processor checks:

- The number of processors a cluster uses
- The set of bound processors

#### Determining the number of processors an iServer System uses

When the PMD starts the first encycsrvr11 process on a machine, the PMD determines the number of processors to which BIRT iServer is bound and stores the list of bound processors.

If you change the processor binding, BIRT iServer does not recognize the changes until you shut down all encycsrvr11 processes on the machine and restart one of the encycsrvr11 processes.

For example, a cluster that has a maximum licensed CPU limit of nine processors consists of two nodes, machine A and machine B.

The machines have the following configuration:

- Machine A has four processors with no processor binding. All the processors can run Actuate processes. BIRT iServer manages an Encyclopedia volume.
- Machine B has eight processors with BIRT iServer bound to five processors. There is no encycsrvr11 process running on the machine, only the PMD.

The cluster counts four processors, the processors on machine A. If you start an encycsrvr11 process on machine B, BIRT iServer on machine A counts the five bound processors on the machine and increases the cluster processor count to nine, four on machine A and five on machine B.

If you bind the PMD on machine B to six processors, the change has no effect until you shut down all the running encycsrvr11 processes on machine B and restart an encycsrvr11 process on machine B.

After you stop the encycsrvr11 processes and restart an encycsrvr11 process on machine B, BIRT iServer System detects that the number of processors in the cluster is ten, which is greater than the maximum number of nine licensed processors. When the number of CPUs exceeds the number of CPUs your license permits, BIRT iServer does not start and returns an error message to Configuration Console.

#### Understanding CPU binding validation while iServer is running

When BIRT iServer is running, each encycsrvr11 process periodically compares the list of processors to which it is bound with the list to which it was bound when it started. If the lists differ:

- BIRT iServer writes a message with the processor information to the log file. The message contains the maximum number of processors the BIRT iServer license file permits and the following information:
  - Current and original number of bound processors
  - Current and original list of bound processors
- If configured, BIRT iServer sends an e-mail message to the administrator. The message states that the BIRT iServer System will shut down in one hour if the list of bound processors is not corrected. The e-mail message contains the information that BIRT iServer sends to the log file.

You must rebind the encycsrvr11 process to the same processors to which it was originally bound.

During the next hour, any attempt to use the encycsrvr11 services fails and a message is written to the appropriate log file. If the list of processors is not restored after an hour, each BIRT iServer in the cluster shuts down and writes an error to its log file.

### Understanding CPU binding validation when an Encyclopedia volume comes online

BIRT iServer uses a separate encycsrvr11 process to manage each Encyclopedia volume on a machine. When you take an Encyclopedia volume online, the PMD starts an encycsrvr11 process:

- When the PMD starts an encycsrvr11 process, the PMD compares the list of processors to which the encycsrvr11 process is bound to the original list of processors to which the PMD is bound. If the lists differ:
- The encycsrvr11 process writes an error to its log file and shuts down.
- BIRT iServer does not take the volume online.

A message in the configuration states that the binding of the new process differs from the original binding of the parent process.

### Understanding CPU binding validation when running iServer processes

Each Factory and View process periodically compares its list of bound processors with the list of processors to which it was bound at startup. If the lists differ, the process writes an error to its log file and shuts down.

#### Configuring e-mail for CPU license problems

BIRT iServer System can send e-mail messages to an administrator if a change in processor binding violates the maximum number of licensed CPUs for BIRT iServer System. To send e-mail about a CPU license problem, set up BIRT iServer System by completing the following tasks in this order:

- 1 Configure every BIRT iServer node to send e-mail.
- 2 Specify the administrator e-mail address for BIRT iServer System.

Specify an administrator e-mail address as the value for the Account to receive administrative e-mail parameter. Set the value by logging into Configuration Console, and choosing System—Properties—Advanced—Cluster Operation—Administrative.

For example, the following e-mail address sends e-mail to a user named admin at a company for which the domain is mycompany:

admin@mycompany.com

**3** Restart BIRT iServer System. Restarting applies the changes after you set or change the e-mail address.
# Part Four

**Backing Up** 

## Chapter

## Backing up an Encyclopedia volume

This chapter discusses the following topics:

- Performing an Encyclopedia volume backup
- Backing up and restoring an Encyclopedia volume that uses a PostgreSQL database
- Backing up and restoring an Encyclopedia volume that uses an Oracle database
- Backing up and restoring an Encyclopedia volume that uses a SQL Server database
- Backing up and restoring an Encyclopedia volume that uses a DB2 database

## Performing an Encyclopedia volume backup

When performing a backup, it is important to note that there are two types of data:

Metadata

Information about iServer system and Encyclopedia volume settings and data objects stored in third-party relational database management system (RDBMS) schemas

Data

iServer system and Encyclopedia volume data objects, such as designs, documents, and information objects, stored as files on disk partitions, and the acserverconfig.xml file containing iServer configuration information

The administrator must back up all Encyclopedia volume metadata and data to ensure the recoverability of a volume in the event of failure. In Release 11, it is not necessary to back up the iServer system schema, although future versions may require this operation to protect critical system metadata. The administrator can restore a corrupted or missing system schema using the System Data Store Administrator utility. For more information on this utility, see "Specifying System Data Store Administrator properties," in Chapter 4, "Upgrading BIRT iServer."

The third-party database that contains Actuate Encyclopedia metadata is a critical component of Actuate iServer System. An Actuate system administrator must take all necessary precautions to ensure that this database is properly backed up and available to safeguard Encyclopedia volume metadata. Please consult Actuate Support at the time of installation if you have any questions about the backup, recovery, or failover procedures necessary to protect against the possibility of catastrophic failure.

## Managing the backup and recovery of Encyclopedia volume metadata and data files

A complete Encyclopedia volume backup must include the following items:

- A database backup of the Encyclopedia volume schema containing the metadata
- A copy of the folders from all Encyclopedia volume disk partitions containing file data
- A copy of the acserverconfig.xml file containing iServer configuration information

In the Windows Actuate 11 Service Pack 3 environment, the default AC\_SERVER\_HOME path is:

```
C:\Program Files\Actuate11SP3\
```

The default AC\_DATA\_HOME path is:

C:\Actuate\iServer\data\

The default Encyclopedia volume path is:

C:\Actuate\iServer\data\encyc

The default acserverconfig.xml file path is:

C:\Actuate\iServer\data\config\11SP3

Back up the Encyclopedia volume metadata in the RDBMS at the same time that you back up the disk partition data files. A carefully coordinated backup ensures that a one-to-one correspondence exists between each entry in the volume metadata database and the data files.

The Encyclopedia volume metadata backup on the RDBMS must be done before the backup of the data on the disk partitions. Files that are partially created when the metadata backup begins are either not yet registered in the database or are marked incomplete in the database. The metadata database does not retain a record of incomplete files.

When contacting Actuate Support to troubleshoot problems, it is best to provide a snapshot of the Encyclopedia volume configuration, including the following items and information:

- A database backup of the Encyclopedia volume schema containing the metadata
- The name of the Encyclopedia volume schema and user that iServer uses to connect to the RDBMS
- A copy of the acserverconfig.xml file containing iServer configuration information
- A copy of the iServer logs

## Using RDBMS and file system backup utilities

The administrator must perform the Encyclopedia volume metadata backup using the tools provided or supported by the RDBMS. Copying the physical files of a database at the operating system level while an RDBMS is running does not create a valid backup.

Most RDBMS backup tools can be scripted and run while iServer is using the database. PostgreSQL, Oracle, Microsoft SQL Server, and DB2 also provide graphical administration tools in addition to command-line tools. For more information on using these RDBMS tools to backup and restore an Encyclopedia volume, see the related sections, later in this chapter.

### How to perform an Encyclopedia volume backup

To back up an Encyclopedia volume, perform the following tasks:

- 1 Make sure that the autoarchive file purging process is not running.
- **2** Make an online backup of the volume schema using the tools provided by the RDBMS.
- **3** Backup the volume data files using the tools available in the operating system environment.

## Avoiding conflict with the file purging process

A metadata backup is consistent with a data backup only if the file purging process that runs during an autoarchive operation does not occur between the time you back up the metadata and the time you back up the data. In Volumes—Properties—Advanced—Archiving And Purging, the administrator can specify when the file purging process runs.

### How to configure Archiving And Purging

To configure the autoarchive file purging process, perform the following tasks:

- 1 From the Advanced view of Configuration Console, choose Volumes.
- **2** On Volumes, point to the icon next to a volume name and choose Properties.

In Volumes—Properties, choose Advanced. In Advanced, choose Archiving And Purging.

- **3** In Archiving And Purging, configure the following time-related file purging properties to times that do not conflict with the time when the backup operation runs, as shown in Figure 10-1:
  - Purge deleted files time Specifies the time when the file purging process runs to permanently delete expired files.
  - Expiration time of deleted files
     Specifies the length of time that must elapse before the file purging process permanently deletes an expired file.

Actuate > Volume properties - Windows Int	ernet Explorer		
Volumes > corp : Properties > Archiving And Pu	rging		<u> </u>
Archiving And Purging			
Expiration time of failed jobs:	43200	Minutes !	
Expiration time of successful jobs:	43200	Minutes !	
Default expiration time of success notices:	0	Minutes !	
Default expiration time of failure notices:	0	Minutes !	
Purge deleted files time:	2:15	24-hour time ! 🛢 💭	
Expiration time of deleted files:	120	Minutes ! 🖹 💭	
■C These fields require volume restart to ta (1) These fields will take default value if left bla	ake effect Ink		
			OK Cancel

Figure 10-1 Configuring file purging properties

Choose OK.

For information on other aspects of archiving, see Chapter 12 "Archiving files," in *Configuring BIRT iServer*.

## Backing up and restoring an Encyclopedia volume that uses a PostgreSQL database

PostgreSQL provides the pgAdmin graphical administration tool or the pg\_dump and pg\_restore command-line utilities to back up and restore a database. These PostgreSQL utilities run on the client not the server.

To back up an Encyclopedia volume in the OOTB PostgreSQL RDBMS environment, the administrator performs the following operations:

- Backs up Encyclopedia volume metadata using the pgAdmin graphical administration tool or the pg\_dump PostgreSQL command-line utility
- Backs up Encyclopedia volume data and configuration files using operating system copy commands

Note that a backup of a PostgreSQL database is not portable across all operating systems.

To restore an Encyclopedia volume in the OOTB PostgreSQL RDBMS environment, the administrator performs the following operations:

 Restores Encyclopedia volume metadata using the pgAdmin graphical administration tool or the pg\_restore PostgreSQL command-line utility  Restores Encyclopedia volume data and configuration files using operating system copy commands

The following sections describe how to backup and restore an Encyclopedia volume that uses the OOTB PostgreSQL database to store the metadata. These demonstrations serve as a detailed reference example. Other RDBMS environments, such as a DB2, Microsoft SQL Server, or Oracle RDBMS, require similar procedures, which are covered in sections later in this chapter.

## Backing up an Encyclopedia volume using pgAdmin

To back up an Encyclopedia volume using the pgAdmin graphical utility, perform the following tasks:

- Create a folder to contain the metadata and volume data backup files
- Back up Encyclopedia volume metadata using the PostgreSQL pgAdmin utility
- Back up the acserverconfig.xml file and volume data folders to the backup folder

Create a folder to contain the metadata and volume data backup files outside the iServer data installation environment. To provide protection against single-point media failure, it is best to store the backup files on a partition that is physically separate from the Encyclopedia volume data location.

In a Windows environment, create a folder to contain the metadata and volume data backup files by performing the following tasks.

### How to create a new backup folder

- 1 Open Windows Explorer.
- 2 In Windows Explorer, choose File→New→Folder repeatedly to create a set of nested folders in the following location:

C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup

Figure 10-2 shows the new folder.

C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc_backup	
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help	Al I
🕞 Back 🔹 🕥 👻 🌮 Search 🕞 Folders	× 9 .
Address 🗁 C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc_backup	💌 🏓 Go
Folders × Name A	Size Type
🞯 Desktop	
🗄 🗎 My Documents	
🖃 😼 My Computer	
🕀 🖑 3½ Floppy (A:)	
🖃 🥯 Local Disk (C:)	
🗆 🧰 Actuate	
🗆 🗁 iServer	
🗁 encyc_backup	

Figure 10-2 Creating a new folder named encyc\_backup

Backup Encyclopedia volume metadata using the graphical administration tool, pgAdmin, to automatically run pg\_dump by performing the following tasks.

### How to run pg\_dump using pgAdmin

- 1 In Windows, choose Start→Programs→pgAdmin III→pgAdmin III.
- **2** On pgAdmin III, in Object browser, right-click the PostgreSQL Database Server and choose Connect, as shown in Figure 10-3. If the PostgreSQL Database Server does not appear in the Object browser, you can add the server manually. For more information on adding the server manually, see Chapter 2, "Installing BIRT iServer," earlier in this book.

😳 pgAdmin III				IJ×
File Edit Plugins View 1	Tools Help			
1 × C 💼	<b>1</b>	। 📕 📑 🌽 द्विंड -	• ?	
Object browser	×	Properties Statistics Dependencies	Dependents	
Servers (1)		Property	Value	
📟 😰 PostgreSQL Databa	Refresh	Description	PostgreSQL Database Server	
	Connoct	III Hostname	urup	
	Delete/Drop	I Port	8432	
	Deleter Drop	Maintenance database	postgres	
	Reports 🕨	Username	postgres	
	Properties	E Store password?	No V	
			res No	
		bee connected.	140	
		•		•
	li	SOL pane		×

Figure 10-3

Connecting to PostgreSQL Database Server

**3** In Connect to Server, type the postgres superuser password, as shown in Figure 10-4. You specified this password in PostgreSQL Database Information during the iServer installation.

🖉 Connect to Server						
Please enter password for user postgres on server PostgreSQL Database Server (urup)						
•••••						
☐ Store password						
Help	ОК	Cancel				

Figure 10-4 Typing the password to connect to PostgreSQL Database Server

**4** On pgAdmin III, in Object browser, expand PostgreSQL Database Server, expand Databases, right-click iserver, and choose Backup, as shown in Figure 10-5. This operation backs up the entire iserver database. Alternatively, to back up only one Encyclopedia volume schema, such as ac\_corp, right-click the volume, and choose Backup.



Figure 10-5 Choosing to back up the iserver database

- **5** On Backup Database iserver, perform the following tasks:
  - 1 In Filename, type:

C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup\iserver.backup

**2** To execute pg\_dump, accept the default option selections, as shown in Figure 10-6, and choose OK.

Backup Database iserv	er <u> </u>
Filename C:\Actuat	e\iServer\encyc_backup\iserver.ba
COMPRESS C TAR	C PLAIN
<ul> <li>✓ Blobs</li> <li>✓ With OIDs</li> <li>✓ Insert commands</li> <li>✓ Disable \$ quoting</li> </ul>	PLAIN options Only data Only schema No owner Create DB Drop DB Disable Trigger
🔽 Verbose messages	
Options Messages	<u>QK</u> <u>C</u> ancel

Figure 10-6 Choosing OK to start pg\_dump execution

**3** pg\_dump executes, writing status messages to BackupDatabase iserver— Messages, as shown in Figure 10-7. Exit code 0 indicates that pg\_dump ran successfully.

Backup Database iserver	- D X
pg_dump: dumping contents of table ac_system_info pg_dump: dumping contents of table ac_user pg_dump: dumping contents of table ac_user gg_dump: dumping contents of table ac_user_license_option pg_dump: dumping contents of table ac_user_incense_option pg_dump: dumping contents of table ac_volume gg_dump: dumping contents of table ac_volume log_dump: dumping contents of table ac_voluter log_dump: dumping contents of table ac_voluter log_dump: dumping contents of table ac_voluter_under log_dump: dumping contents of table ac_voluter_work_unders	5
Pg_dump: dumping contents of cable ac_used = _work_dums gg_dump: dumping contents of table ac_node gg_dump: dumping contents of table ac_node_volume gg_dump: dumping contents of table ac_node_work_units Process returned exit code 0.	
Coptions Messages Done	

Figure 10-7 Viewing status messages pg\_dump writes during execution

4 Scroll to the top of the output in Backup Database iserver—Messages to see the command that executed pg\_dump, as shown in Figure 10-8.

📴 Backup Database iserver 📃	٦×
C:\Program Files\pgAdmin III\1.10\pg_dump.exehost urupport 8432username postgresfo pg_dump: reading user-defined functions pg_dump: reading user-defined functions pg_dump: reading user-defined aggregate functions pg_dump: reading user-defined aggregate functions pg_dump: reading user-defined aggregate functions pg_dump: reading user-defined perators pg_dump: reading user-defined text search parsers pg_dump: reading user-defined text search templates pg_dump: reading user-defined text search templates pg_dump: reading user-defined text search configurations pg_dump: reading user-defined text search configurations pg_dump: reading user-defined foreign servers pg_dump: reading user-defined conversions pg_dump: reading user-defined conversions pg_dump: reading user-defined conversions pg_dump: reading user-defined conversions pg_dump: reading user-defined text search defined perator families pg_dump: reading user-defined conversions pg_dump: reading user-defined text search defined perator families pg_dump: reading user-defined conversions pg_dump: reading user-defined text search defined perators pg_dump: reading user-defined conversions pg_dump: reading user-defined text search defined perators pg_dump: reading user-defined conversions pg_dump: reading user-defined text search defined perators pg_dump: reading user-defined text search defined perators pg_dump: reading user-defined text search defined perators pg_dump: reading user-defined perators pg_dump	
Options         Messages           Help         Done         Cancel	el



The complete text of the command is:

- C:\Program Files\pgAdmin III\1.10\pg\_dump.exe --host urup --port 8432 --username postgres --format custom --blobs --verbose --file "C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup\ iserver.backup" iserver
- **5** On Backup Database iserver, choose Done.

## Backing up an Encyclopedia volume using pg\_dump

Alternatively, you can backup an Encyclopedia volume schema using the command-line version of pg\_dump. The following example duplicates the operations performed in the previous section using the graphical PostgreSQL administration tool, pgAdmin. You do not need to do both activities.

The following example shows a typical pg\_dump command used to export the contents of an Encyclopedia volume schema to a backup file:

pg\_dump -F c -n ac\_corp -f ac\_corp\_schema.dmp -h dbhost -p 8432 -U postgres dbname

This pg\_dump command example uses the following arguments:

■ F

Specifies the output format. The value c is an abbreviation for custom, which creates a compressed archive that can be used as input to pg\_restore.

∎ n

Species the schema. Use multiple -n arguments to specify a list. Use wildcard notation to specify a character pattern, such as ac\_\*. to specify all volumes names that start with the prefix ac\_. If -n is not specified, pg\_dump exports all non-system schemas.

∎ f

Specifies the output file, such as ac\_corp\_schema.dmp.

∎ h

Specifies the host name of the machine where the PostgreSQL server is running, such as dbhost.

■ p

Specifies the port where the server listens for connection requests.

■ U

Specifies the user name for the connection to the PostgreSQL server, such as postgres.

dbname

Replace this string in the example with the database name, such as actuate\_db.

Re-run the command to backup each Encyclopedia volume schema to a separate archive. To run multiple volume schema backups using a script, set up auto-login using a .pgpass file. The file should contain connection information in the following format:

hostname:port:database:username:password

More information about setting up a scripted backup using a .pgpass file is available at:

http://www.postgresql.org/docs/8.4/static/libpq-pgpass.html

Run pg\_dump from the command line by performing the following tasks.

### How to run pg\_dump from a command prompt

- **1** Open a command prompt.
- **2** Navigate to the following location:

```
C:\Program Files\Actuate11SP3\iServer\postgresql\bin
```

**3** Execute the following command. Substitute your machine name for urup in this example:

```
pg_dump.exe --host urup --port 8432 --username postgres
    --format custom --blobs --verbose --file
    "C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc backup\iserver.backup" iserver
```

This operation backs up the entire iserver database. If the -n argument specifying a specific schema or list of schemas is not specified, pg\_dump exports all non-system schemas. Alternatively, you can back up only one Encyclopedia volume schema, such as ac\_corp, by using the -n argument to to specify a particular schema.

**4** Type the postgres superuser password. The administrator specified this password in PostgreSQL Database Information during the iServer installation procedure in Exercise 1.

pg\_dump executes, writing status messages to the command prompt.

After backing up the Encyclopedia volume metadata, back up the acserverconfig.xml file and volume data directories to the backup directory by performing the following tasks.

### How to back up the volume data folders

1 Open Windows Explorer and navigate to AC\_DATA\_HOME, which is the location of the iServer data. You specified this location on Setup Type during the install. The default path for AC\_DATA\_HOME is:

```
C:\Actuate\iServer\data
```

**2** In AC\_DATA\_HOME, navigate to the config folder that contains acserverconfig.xml file. In Actuate 11 Service Pack 3, this file is located in the following subfolder:

```
C:\Actuate\iServer\data\config\11SP3
```

**3** Select acserverconfig.xml, right click, and choose Copy, as shown in Figure 10-9.

Copy this file to the following backup location:

C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup

**4** In AC\_DATA\_HOME\encyc, select the file, fileType, status, and tempRov folders, right-click, and choose Copy. Copy these folders to the following backup location:

C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup

In a backup taken immediately after an iServer installation, where there has been no activity on the system, the status or tempRov folders may not exist. These folders contain information about job details and completion notices and do not appear until a job executes. If these folders are not present in the environment, simply back up the file and fileType folders.

Do not back up the postgresql folder in an Encyclopedia volume backup operation. The postgres folder contains data, such as log files, from the OOTB PostgreSQL RDBMS installation, which remains active. Inadvertently including these files in an iServer backup, then accidentally overwriting the files with a stale version in a restore operation can cause problems in the PostgreSQL RDBMS installation.



Figure 10-9 Copying acserverconfig.xml

Figure 10-10 shows a copy operation that contains the file, fileType, status, and tempRov folders.

C:\Actuate\iServer\data\encyc				j	- <u> </u>
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help					R
🕒 Back 🔹 🌍 👻 🌮 Search 🕞 Folders	B 🖻 🗙	9			
Address 🗁 C:\Actuate\iServer\data\encyc				•	→ Go
Folders ×	Name 🔺		Size	Туре	
Local Disk (C:)     Actuate     Gerver     Gerver	file postgresql status tempRov	Explore Open Browse with Pair Search Search Search Search To Cut Copy Create Shortcut Delete Reame	nt Shop Pro 9	File Folder File Folder File Folder File Folder File Folder	
🛨 🧰 servletcontainer 🗨	•	Properties			•



The contents of the backup folder appear as shown in Figure 10-11.

Er C:Vactuate\iServer\encyc_backup						
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help			N.			
🕞 Back 🔹 💮 👻 🎓 Search 🕞 Folders	B 🖻 🗙 🗐 📰-					
Address 🔂 C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc_backup			▼ → Go			
Folders ×	Name 🔺	Size	Туре			
	<ul> <li>The</li> <li>The Type</li> <li>status</li> <li>tempRov</li> <li>acserverconfig.xml</li> <li>iserver.backup</li> </ul>	9 KB 186 KB	File Folder File Folder File Folder XML Document BACKUP File			
🖃 🗁 encyc_backup 💌	•		F			

Figure 10-11 Viewing the backed up files

## Restoring an Encyclopedia volume using pgAdmin

To restore a backed-up Encyclopedia volume, perform the following tasks:

- Take the Encyclopedia volume offline
- Delete the acserverconfig.xml file and volume data folders in AC\_DATA\_HOME

- Copy the backed up acserverconfig.xml file and volume data folders from the backup folder to AC\_DATA\_HOME
- Restore the Encyclopedia volume metadata using the PostgreSQL pg\_restore utility
- Take the Encyclopedia volume online

To begin the restore operation, take the Encyclopedia volume offline by performing the following tasks.

### How to take the Encyclopedia volume offline

- 1 Log in to Configuration Console. On the Simple view, choose Advanced View. Choose Volumes.
- **2** On Volumes, take the volume offline, as shown in Figure 10-12.

	Eurotom	Volumes				
	System		≣~ Actu	upon selected items		
	Servers	🖶 Metadata Database	Schema	Туре	🗖 Volume	Status
		■* Default SQLServer MetadataDatabase	≣r <u>ac_corp</u>	Volume	■ = <u>corp</u>	ONLINE
	Server		≣* <u>ac corp system</u>	System	Properties	
	Templates	Legend			Take offlin	e
8	Volumes	Changes pending require volume restart	to take effect			

Figure 10-12 Taking the volume offline

### How to restore the backed up volume data folders

- 1 In Windows Explorer, navigate to AC\_DATA\_HOME\config\11SP3.
- **2** Select acserverconfig.xml, right-click, and choose Delete, as shown in Figure 10-13. Confirm the deletion.

🔄 C:\Actuate\iServer\data\config\11SP3					
<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> elp				N	
🕞 Back 🔹 💮 👻 🏂 🔎 Search 🕞 Folders	B 🖻 🗙 🧐	-			
Address C:\Actuate\iServer\data\config\11SP3				▼ 🗲 Go	
Folders ×	Name 🔺		Size	Туре	
My PSP Files     My Computer     My Computer     Steppy (A)     Local Disk (C:)     Actuate     Server     data     file infie     file     fi	acconfigowner.lock     acserverconfig.xml     acserverconfig.xml     acserverlicense.xm	Open Edit Open With Scan for threats WinZip Send To Cut Copy Create Shortcut Delete Rename Properties	1 KB 9 KB 6 KB 3 KB	LOCK File XML Document BOOTED File XML Document	
<ul> <li>              €</li></ul>	-				

Figure 10-13 Deleting acserverconfig.xml

**3** In AC\_DATA\_HOME, open the encyc folder.

In AC\_DATA\_HOME\encyc, select the file and fileType, status, and tempRov folders, right-click, then choose Delete, as shown in Figure 10-14. Confirm the deletion.

In a backup taken immediately after an iServer installation where there has been no activity on the system, the status or tempRov folders may not exist. Be sure to not select and delete the postgresql folder.



Figure 10-14 Deleting the file, fileType, and status folders from AC\_DATA\_HOME\encyc

**4** In Windows Explorer, navigate to the following location:

C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup

Select acserverconfig.xml, right-click, choose Copy, and copy this file to AC\_DATA\_HOME\config\11SP3, as shown in Figure 10-15.



Figure 10-15 Choosing to copy acserverconfig.xml

AC\_DATA\_HOME\config\11SP3 appears as shown in Figure 10-16.



Figure 10-16 Viewing AC\_DATA\_HOME\config\11SP3 after restoring acserverconfig.xml

**5** In C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup, select the file, filetype, status, and tempROV folders, right-click, choose Copy, and copy these folders to AC\_DATA\_HOME\encyc, as shown in Figure 10-17.









### How to run pg\_restore using pgAdmin

1 On pgAdmin III, in Object browser, right-click iserver and choose Restore, as shown in Figure 10-19.

opgAdmin III			
File Edit Plugins View	v Tools Help		
* <i>G</i>   @	S 3	27 🔜 🔤 🧷 🕻	ig - 🛡 📍
Object browser	× Proper	ties Statistics Dependencies	Dependents
Servers (1)	Prope	rty	Value
PostgreSQL Datab	ase Server	me	iserver
H- iserver	i 🗐 OI	D	16386
postgre	Refresh	Iner	postgres
		L	{postgres=CTc/postgres,ac_corp=c/postgres,iserver=c/postgres,ac_
Group Role:	New Object 🔹 🕨	plespace	pg_default
🗄 🔬 Login Roles 🔤	Delete/Drop	fault tablespace	pg_default
	CBEATE script	coding	UTF8
	Benorts	lation	C
	Maintenance	aracter type	c
	Backup	ow connections?	Yes
	Restore	nnected?	Yes
		nnection limit	-1
	Properties	stem database?	No
	Co IIII	mment	
	4		Þ

Figure 10-19 Choosing to restore the iserver database from backup

- **2** On Restore Database iserver, perform the following tasks:
  - 1 Choose the ellipse next to Filename. On Select backup filename, navigate to, and select the backup file that pg\_dump created. The name of this file is:

C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup\iserver.backup

2 Select Clean before restore.

Restore Database iserver appears, as shown in Figure 10-20.

Restore D	atabase iserver
Filename	C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc_ba
	🖵 Only data
	🖵 Only schema
	☐ Single object
	No owner
	🗖 Disable Trigger
	Clean before restore
	✓ Verbose messages
Options Cont	ents Messages
Help	View OK Cancel

Figure 10-20 Specifying the backup file to restore

Choose OK.

- **3** pg\_restore executes, writing status messages to BackupDatabase iserver— Messages, as shown in Figure 10-21. Exit code 0 indicates that pg\_restore ran successfully.
- 258 Installing BIRT iServer for Windows

Restore Database iserver	×
pg_restore: setting owner and privileges for INDEX ac_ulo_vli_loi_j pg_restore: setting owner and privileges for INDEX ac_upo_vli_prn_j pg_restore: setting owner and privileges for INDEX ac_upo_vli_prn_j pg_restore: setting owner and privileges for INDEX ac_usr_vli_ds_j pg_restore: setting owner and privileges for INDEX ac_usr_vli_uln_dui_j pg_restore: setting owner and privileges for INDEX ac_usr_vli_uln_dui_j pg_restore: setting owner and privileges for INDEX ac_usr_vli_uln_dui_pg_restore: setting owner and privileges for INDEX ac_usr_vli_pi pg_restore: setting owner and privileges for INDEX ac_usr_vli_pi pg_restore: setting owner and privileges for INDEX ac_usr_pi pg_restore: setting owner and privileges for INDEX ac_usr_pi	•
Process returned exit code 0.	-
Options Contents Messages	
Help View Done Cancel	

Figure 10-21 Viewing status messages pg\_restore writes during execution

4 Scroll to the top of the output in Backup Database iserver—Messages to see the command that executed pg\_restore, as shown in Figure 10-22.

C:\Program Files\pgAdmin III\1.10\pg_restore.exehost urupport 8432 pg_restore: conpecting to database for restore pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_nvu_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_nod_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_ndv_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_ndv_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_dot_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_vim_vin_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vi_tms_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vi_tds_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_us_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_us_vi_tds_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_us_vi_tds_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_us_vi_tds_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_us_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_us_vi_tds_i pg_restore:	Restore Database iserver
pg_restore: connecting to database for restore pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_nvu_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_nod_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_nod_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_ndx_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_dx_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_dx_syn_ji pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_vin_vin_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_vin_vin_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vi, lun_dul_ji pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vi, lun_di_ji pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vi, lun_ji pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vi, lol_ji pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vi, lol_ji pg_resto	C:\Program Files\pgAdmin III\1.10\pg_restore.exehost urupport 8432 🔺
pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_nov_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_nod_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_nod_cli_jpa_prn pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_ndv_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_cls_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_cls_yn_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_cls_yn_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vil_uh_dulj pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vil_tns_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vil_ts_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vil_ts_j	pg_restore: connecting to database for restore 🛛 🛁
pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_nod_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_nod_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_ndv_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_cNu_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usyn_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_wi_lun_dui_ji pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_wi_lun_dui_ji pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_wi_lun_si pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_wi_lot_si pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_wi_lot_si pg_	pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_nwu_pi
pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_nod_cli_jpa_prn pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_ndv_pin pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_dx_yni pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_ds_yni_  pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_ds_yni_  pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vi.lun.dui_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vi.lun.dui_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vi.lun.gi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vi.logi_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vi.logi_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_udp_vi.jet_gt_ji	pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_nod_pi
pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_ndx_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_nds_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_ds_syn_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_vln_yh_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vli_un_dui_ji pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vli_uns_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vli_ds_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usp_vl_torn_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usp_vli_ds_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usp_vli_ds_j	pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_nod_cli_ipa_prn
pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_das_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_cvu_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_vsr_uji pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vi_lun_dul_ji pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vi_lun_si pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vi_lun_si pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vi_lusr_ji pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_uop_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_uop_ii pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_uop_vi_joi_ji pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_udp_vi_joi_ji pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_udp_vi_joi_ji	pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_ndv_pi
pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_cwu_pii pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_us_yn_ji pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vii_uh_dui_ji pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vii_tms_ji pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vii_tms_ji pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vii_ds_ji pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_vii_prn_ji pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_vii_prn_ji pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_vii_prn_ji pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_vii_pij pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_vii_pij pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_vii_pit_git_ji	pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_nds_pi
pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_vln_syn_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_vln_vln_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vli_tins_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vli_tins_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vli_tins_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_vli_prn_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_ulo_vli_jol_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_ulo_vli_jol_j	pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_cwu_pi
pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_utrn_vin_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vil_tin_dul_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vil_tins_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_vil_prn_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_vil_prn_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_udo_vil_oli_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_udo_vil_oli_i	pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_cls_syn_i
pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vil_uln_dui_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vil_tms_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vil_tds_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_vil_prn_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_vil_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_ulo_vil_joi_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_udp_vil_gtt_gti_j	pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_vlm_vln_i
pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vil_tms_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usp_vil_dbs_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_vil_prn_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_ulo_vil_oli_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_ulo_vil_oli_j	pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vli_uln_dui_i
pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vli_dts_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_vli_prn_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_ulo_vli_loi_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_udp_vli_gtt_gti_j	pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vli_tms_i
pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_vli_prn_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_ulo_vli_jol_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_udp_vli_gtt_gti_i	pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_usr_vli_dts_i
pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_pi pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_ulo_vii_loi_i pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_udp_vii_gtt_gti_i	pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_vli_prn_i
pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_ulo_vli_loi_j pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_udp_vli_gtt_gti_i	pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_upo_pi
pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_udp_vli_gtt_gti_i	pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_ulo_vli_loi_i
	pg_restore: dropping INDEX ac_udp_vli_gtt_gti_i
Options Contents Messages	Options Contents Messages
Help View Done Cancel	Help View Done Cancel

Figure 10-22 Viewing the command that executed pg\_restore

The complete text of the command is:

- C:\Program Files\pgAdmin III\1.10\pg\_restore.exe --host urup --port 8432 --username postgres --dbname iserver --clean --verbose "C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc backup\iserver.backup"
- **5** On Backup Database iserver, choose Done.

## Restoring an Encyclopedia volume using pg\_restore

Alternatively, you can restore an Encyclopedia volume schema using the command-line version of pg\_restore. The following example duplicates the restore operations performed in the previous section using the graphical PostgreSQL administration tool, pgAdmin. You do not need to do both activities.

The pg\_restore utility runs using arguments similar to the pg\_dump utility. The following example shows a typical pg\_restore command used to import the contents of a backup file to an Encyclopedia volume schema:

```
pg_restore -h mydbhost -p 8432 -U postgres -d db_name
ac_corp_schema.dmp
```

Run pg\_restore from the command line by performing the following tasks.

#### How to run pg\_restore from a command prompt

- **1** Open a command prompt.
- **2** Navigate to the following location:

C:\Program Files\Actuate11\iServer\postgresql\bin

**3** Enter the following command. Substitute your machine name for urup in this example:

```
pg_restore.exe --host urup --port 8432 --username postgres --
dbname iserver --clean --verbose "C:\Actuate\iServer\
encyc backup\iserver.backup"
```

Press Enter.

**4** Type the postgres superuser password. The administrator specified this password in PostgreSQL Database Information during the iServer installation procedure in Exercise 1. Press Enter.

pg\_restore executes, writing status messages to the command prompt.

Take the Encyclopedia volume online by performing the following tasks.

#### How to take the Encyclopedia volume online

- 1 Log in to Configuration Console. On the Simple view, choose Advanced View. Choose Volumes.
- **2** On the Simple view, choose Advanced view. Choose Volumes.
- **3** On Volumes, take the volume online, as shown in Figure 10-23.

	Funtam	Volumes				
	System		≣≖ Act	t upon selected i	items	
	Servers	🖶 Metadata Database	Schema	Туре	📕 Volume	Status
	-	■* Default SQLServer Metac	lataDatabase ≡* <u>ac_corp_</u>	Volume	□ ≡* <u>corp</u>	OFFLINE
Server Configuration Templates			≡ <mark>≭</mark> ac corp syster	n_System	Proper	ties
		Legend			Take o	nline
	Volumes	Changes pending require w	olume restart to take effect		Remov	re

Figure 10-23 Taking the volume online

More information about backing up and restoring an Encyclopedia volume schema using the PostgreSQL pg\_dump and pg\_restore utilities is available at the following location:

http://www.postgresql.org/docs/8.4/static/backup.html

## Backing up and restoring an Encyclopedia volume that uses an Oracle database

Oracle provides the Data Pump Export (expdp) and Import (impdp) commandline utilities to back up and restore a database. Oracle Data Pump utilities enable high-speed uploading and downloading of data and metadata in an Oracle RDBMS. Unlike the PostgreSQL backup and restore utilities, the Oracle Data Pump utilities run on the server, not the client, for greater efficiency.

To back up an Encyclopedia volume stored in an Oracle RDBMS, the administrator performs the following operations:

- Backs up Encyclopedia volume metadata using the Oracle Data Pump Export (expdp) command-line utility
- Backs up Encyclopedia volume data and configuration file using operating system copy commands

To restore an Encyclopedia volume in an Oracle RDBMS, the administrator performs the following operations:

- Restores Encyclopedia volume metadata using the Oracle Data Pump Import (impdp) command-line utility
- Restores Encyclopedia volume data and configuration file using operating system copy commands

The following sections provide more information on how to perform these backup and restore operations.

## Backing up an Encyclopedia volume using Oracle Data Pump Export (expdp)

Oracle Data Pump utilities require the database administrator to map a database dump directory to a physical directory in the file system. The Oracle RDBMS writes to and reads from this directory when performing export and import operations.

Create a directory to contain the metadata and volume data backup files outside the iServer data installation environment. To provide protection against singlepoint media failure, it is best to store the backup files on a partition that is physically separate from the Encyclopedia volume data location. To back up an Encyclopedia volume metadata using expdp, perform the following tasks:

- Create a directory to contain the metadata and volume data backup files using sqlplus
- Backup Encyclopedia volume metadata using the Oracle Data Pump Export (expdp) utility
- Back up the acserverconfig.xml file and volume data folders to the backup folder

### How to create a back up of the Encyclopedia volume metadata

- 1 In Windows, open a command prompt.
- **2** Use sqlplus, an Oracle SQL editing tool, to log in as the system administrator, as shown in the following example:

sqlplus system/password@db\_host/dbname.actuate.com

The example specifies the system administrator and password, the host name of the machine where the Oracle server is running, and the full database domain name.

**3** In sqlplus, create a backup directory to contain the Encyclopedia volume metadata, as shown in the following example:

```
SQL> CREATE DIRECTORY encyc_backup
AS 'C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc_backup';
SQL> exit
```

Exit sqlplus.

**4** Backup the Encyclopedia volume metadata using the Oracle Data Pump Export (expdp) utility, as shown in the following example:

```
expdp system/password@db_host/dbname.actuate.com
SCHEMAS=corp
DIRECTORY=encyc_backup
DUMPFILE=ac_corp_schema.dmp
```

The expdp example uses the following arguments:

- system/password@db\_host/dbname.actuate.com
   Specifies the system administrator and password, the host name of the machine where the Oracle server is running, and the full database domain name.
- SCHEMAS

Species the Encyclopedia volume schema to export, such as corp.

DIRECTORY

Specifies the directory for writing the database dump, such as encyc\_backup, created by the system administrator in sqlplus.

DUMPFILE

Specifies the name of the output file, such as ac\_corp\_schema.dmp.

After backing up the Encyclopedia volume metadata, back up the acserverconfig.xml file and volume data directories to the backup directory by performing the following tasks.

#### How to back up the volume data directories

1 Open Windows Explorer and navigate to AC\_DATA\_HOME, the location of the iServer data. The administrator specified this location on Setup Type during the install. The default path for AC\_DATA\_HOME is:

C:\Actuate11\iServer\data

**2** In AC\_DATA\_HOME, navigate to the config folder that contains acserverconfig.xml file. In Actuate 11 Service Pack 3, this file is located in the following subfolder:

C:\Actuate\iServer\data\config\11SP3

Copy acserverconfig.xml to the following backup location:

C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup

**3** In AC\_DATA\_HOME\encyc, select the file, fileType, status, and tempRov directories, right-click, and choose Copy to copy these directories to the following backup location:

C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup

In a backup taken immediately after an iServer installation where there has been no activity on the system, the status or tempRov directories may not exist. These directories contain information about job details and completion notices and do not appear until a job executes. If these directories are not present in the environment, simply back up the file and fileType directories.

## Restoring an Encyclopedia volume using Oracle Data Pump Import (impdp)

To restore a backed-up Encyclopedia volume using Oracle Data Pump Import (impdp), perform the following tasks:

- Take the Encyclopedia volume offline
- Delete the acserverconfig.xml file and volume data directories in AC\_DATA\_HOME
- Copy the backed up acserverconfig.xml file and volume data directories from the backup directory to AC\_DATA\_HOME

- Restore the Encyclopedia volume metadata using the Oracle impdp utility
- Take the Encyclopedia volume online

Take the Encyclopedia volume offline by performing the following tasks.

#### How to take the Encyclopedia volume offline

- 1 Log in to Configuration Console. On the Simple view, choose Advanced View. Choose Volumes.
- **2** On Volumes, take the volume offline, as shown in Figure 10-24.

		Volumes
	System	■ Act upon selected items
	Servers	🖶 Metadata Database Schema Type 🗖 Volume Status
		Er <u>Default SQLServer MetadataDatabase</u> Er <u>ac corp</u> Volume
	Server	≣ <del>v</del> ac corp system System Properties
	Templates	Legend Take offline
	Volumes	Changes pending require volume restart to take effect

Figure 10-24 Taking the volume offline

### How to restore the backed up volume data directories

- 1 In Windows Explorer, navigate to AC\_DATA\_HOME.
- **2** Navigate to the config folder that contains the acserverconfig.xml file. In Actuate 11 Service Pack 3, this file is located in the following subfolder:

```
C:\Actuate\iServer\data\config\11SP3
```

Select acserverconfig.xml, right-click, and choose Delete. Confirm the deletion.

3 In AC\_DATA\_HOME, navigate to the encyc directory.

In AC\_DATA\_HOME\encyc, select the file, fileType, status, and tempRov directories, right-click, then choose Delete. Confirm the deletion.

In a backup taken immediately after an iServer installation where there has been no activity on the system, the status or tempRov directories may not exist.

4 In Windows Explorer, navigate to the following backup directory location:

C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup

- **5** From the backup directory location, perform the following tasks:
  - 1 Select acserverconfig.xml, right-click, choose Copy, and copy this file to AC\_DATA\_HOME\config\11SP3.
  - 2 In C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup, select the file, filetype, status, and tempROV directories, right-click, choose Copy, and copy these directories to AC\_DATA\_HOME\encyc.

Restore the Encyclopedia volume metadata using the Oracle Data Pump Import (impdp) command-line utility by performing the following tasks.

### How to restore a back up of the Encyclopedia volume metadata

- 1 In Windows, open a command prompt.
- **2** Restore the Encyclopedia volume metadata using the impdp utility, as shown in the following example:

```
impdp system/password@db_host/dbname.actuate.com
    SCHEMAS=corp
    DIRECTORY=encyc_backup
    DUMPFILE=ac corp schema.dmp
```

The Oracle impdp utility runs using arguments similar to the expdp utility.

Take the Encyclopedia volume online by performing the following tasks.

#### How to take the Encyclopedia volume online

- 1 Log in to Configuration Console. On the Simple view, choose Advanced View. Choose Volumes.
- **2** On Volumes, take the volume online, as shown in Figure 10-25.



Figure 10-25 Taking the volume online

For more information about backing up and restoring an Encyclopedia volume schema using the Oracle Data Pump utilities, go to the following location:

```
http://download.oracle.com/docs/cd/B19306_01/server.102/b14215/
dp_overview.htm
```

## Backing up and restoring an Encyclopedia volume that uses a SQL Server database

## Backing up and restoring an Encyclopedia volume

To back up an Encyclopedia volume in the SQL ServerRDBMS environment, the administrator performs the following operations:

- Backs up Encyclopedia volume metadata using the SQL Server Management Studio graphical administration tool or the sqlcmd command-line utility
- Backs up Encyclopedia volume data and configuration files using operating system copy commands

To restore an Encyclopedia volume in the SQL Server RDBMS environment, the administrator performs the following operations:

- Restores Encyclopedia volume data and configuration files using operating system copy commands
- Backs up the tail of the transaction log using the SQL Server Management Studio graphical administration tool or the sqlcmd command-line utility
- Restores Encyclopedia volume metadata using the SQL Server Management Studio graphical administration tool or the sqlcmd command-line utility

The following sections show how to perform these backup and restore operations.

## Backing up an Encyclopedia volume using SQL Server Management Studio

To back up an Encyclopedia volume, perform the following tasks:

- Create a folder to contain the volume data backup files.
- Back up Encyclopedia volume metadata using SQL Server Management Studio.
- Back up the acserverconfig.xml file and volume data folders to the backup folder.

Create a folder to contain the volume data backup files outside the iServer data installation environment. To provide protection against single-point media failure, it is best to store the backup files on a partition that is physically separate from the Encyclopedia volume data location.

In a Windows environment, create a folder to contain the volume data backup files by performing the following tasks.

### How to create a new backup folder

- 1 Open Windows Explorer.
- 2 In Windows Explorer, choose File→New→Folder repeatedly to create a set of nested folders in the following location:

```
C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc_backup
```

Figure 10-26 shows the new folder.

C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc_backup		
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help		- All
🕞 Back 🔹 🌍 👻 🏂 🔎 Search 🎼	Folders 🕼 🌮 🗙 🇐 🛄	•
Address 🗁 C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc_backup		▼ → Go
Folders	× Name A	Size Type
🞯 Desktop		
🗄 🛅 My Documents		
🖃 😼 My Computer		
🕀 🛃 3½ Floppy (A:)		
🖃 🥯 Local Disk (C:)		
🗆 🧰 Actuate		
🗉 🚞 iServer		
🗁 encyc_backup		

Figure 10-26 Creating a new folder named encyc\_backup

Backup Encyclopedia volume metadata using the SQL Server graphical administration tool, SQL Server Management Studio, by performing the following tasks.

## How to create a backup of the Encyclopedia volume metadata using SQL Server Management Studio

- 1 Choose Start→Programs→Microsoft SQL Server 2008→SQL Server Management Studio.
- **2** On Connect to Server, in Server name, type your machine name, such as urup, as shown in Figure 10-27. Choose Connect.

Connect to Server SQL Server 2008			
Server type:	Database Engine		
Server name:	ver name: URUP		
Authentication:	hentication: Windows Authentication		
User name:	URUP\Administrator		
Password:			
	Remember password		
Conne	ct Cancel Help Options >>		

Figure 10-27 Connecting to a machine named urup

3 On Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio, in Object Explorer, expand Databases. Right-click the database named iserver and choose Tasks→Back Up, as shown in Figure 10-28.

Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio		
File Edit View Project Debug Tools Windo	w Community Help	
🗄 🛄 New Query   🕞   📆 📆 📆   🕞   😂 📕 🧉		
Object Explorer - 7 ×		
Connect - 🛃 🗒 🔳 👅 🖻 😹		
URUP (SQL Server 10.0.1600 - URUP\Administral		
Databases     Detabases     System Databases		
Security     New Database		
E Server Obje New Query		
Tasks	Detach	
Policies >	Take Offline	
Facets	Bring Online	
Start PowerShell	Shrink 🔸	
Reports +	Back Up	
Rename	Restore +	
Delete	Mirror	
Refresh	Launch Database Mirroring Monitor	
Properties	Ship Transaction Logs	
	Generate Scripts	
	Publish using Web Service	
	Import Data	
	Export Data	
	Copy Database	
Ready	Manage Database Encryption	//

Figure 10-28 Choosing to backup the database named iserver

- 4 On Back Up Database—General, perform the following tasks:
  - 1 In the Source section, in Database, select iserver.
  - 2 In Backup type, select Full.
  - 3 Leave Copy Only Backup unselected.
  - 4 For Backup component, select Database.
  - **5** In the Backup set section, in Name, accept the default value as the name for the backup set. Alternatively, type a different name.
  - 6 In Description, type an optional description for the backup set.
  - 7 For Backup set will expire, in After, accept the default value of 0 to specify that the backup set will not expire and cannot be overwritten. Alternatively, specify a number of days after which the backup set expires and can be overwritten.

Optionally, select On to specify an expiration date for the backup set.

- 8 In the Destination section, perform the following tasks:
  - 1 For Back up to, accept the default value of Disk.

- 2 Choose Remove to delete the default backup destination.
- 3 Choose Add.
- 4 On Select Backup Destination, as shown in Figure 10-29, in File name, type:

C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup\iserver.bak





On Select Backup Destination, choose OK.

Back Up Database—General appears as shown in Figure 10-30. Choose OK.

Back Up Database - iserve	r		
Select a page	🔄 Script 👻 📑 Help		
Options	Source		
	Database:	iserver	•
	Recovery model:	, BULK_LOGGED	
	Backup type:	Full	-
	🗖 Copy Only Backup	,	_
	Backup component:		
	Database		
	Files and filegroups:		
	Backup set		
	Name:	iserver-Full Database Backup	
	Description:		
	Backup set will expire:		
	<ul> <li>After:</li> </ul>	0 📩 days	
Connection	C 0n:	9/15/2011 💌	
Server: URUP	Destination Back up to:	isk C Tape	
Connection: URUP\Administrator	C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc_backup\	iserver.bak	Add
View connection properties			Remove
Progress			Contents
Ready	<u>دا</u>		
		OK	Cancel

Figure 10-30 Viewing Back Up Database with new backup location

- **5** Select Back Up Database—Options and perform the following tasks:
  - 1 In the Overwrite media section, accept the default option, Back up to the existing media set. For Back up to the existing media set, accept the default option, Append to the existing backup set.
  - **2** In the Reliability section, accept the default value of unselected for all options. Alternatively, select any combination of these options.
  - **3** In the Compression section, for Set backup compression, accept the default value of Use the default server setting. The default value is Do not compress the backup.

Back Up Database—Options appears as shown in Figure 10-31.

Back Up Database - iserve	r <u>- [] -</u>
Select a page	🔊 Script 👻 📑 Help
Select a page	Script   Help  Overwrite media  Append to the existing media set  Append to the existing backup set  Append to the existing backup set  Coverwrite all existing backup sets  Check media set name and backup set expiration  Media set name:  Back up to a new media set, and erase all existing backup sets  New media set name:  New media set name:  Reliability  Felfability  Felfability  Felform checksum before writing to media
Connection	Continue on error
Server: altdbsqlsrvr Connection: ALTDBSQLSRVR\Administrator	Transaction log     Truncate the transaction log     Eack up the tail of the log, and leave the database in the restoring state     Tape drive
View connection properties           Progress           Scripting completed successfully.	Unload the tape after backup     Rewind the tape before unloading     Compression     Set backup compression:     Use the default server setting
	OK Cancel

Figure 10-31 Accepting the default values on Back Up Database—Options

4 If you want SQL Server Management Studio to generate and display the Transact-SQL statements that the backup operation executes, choose the arrow next to Script then select Script Action to New Query Window, as shown in Figure 10-32.

🔲 Back Up Database - iserv	er		
Select a page	🔄 Script 👻 📑 Help		
Eeneral	Script Action to New Query Window	Ctrl+Shift+N	
	Script Action to File	Ctrl+Shift+F	
	Script Action to Clipboard	Ctrl+Shift+C	
	Script Action to Job	Ctrl+Shift+M	
	<ul> <li>Overwrite all existing backup sets</li> </ul>		
	🗖 Check media set name and backu	p set expiration	

Figure 10-32 Choosing to display Transact-SQL statements

- 5 Choose OK.
- 6 In the dialog box stating that the backup completed successfully, choose OK, as shown in Figure 10-33.



Figure 10-33 Acknowledging the successful backup operation

Alternatively, you can also backup the Encyclopedia volume metadata using the sqlcmd utility. The following example duplicates the operations performed in the previous section using the graphical SQL Server administration tool, SQL Server Management Studio. You do not need to do both activities.

## How to create a backup of the Encyclopedia volume metadata using the sqlcmd utility from a command prompt

- **1** Open a command prompt.
- **2** To connect with the default instance of SQL Server running on your machine, type the following command and press enter:

sqlcmd

**3** At the sqlcmd prompt, type the following command and press enter:

```
BACKUP DATABASE [iserver] TO DISK = N'C:\Program Files\
Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL10.MSSQLSERVER\MSSQL\Backup\
iserver.bak' WITH NOFORMAT, NOINIT, NAME = N'iserver-Full
Database Backup', SKIP, NOREWIND, NOUNLOAD, STATS = 10
```

At the sqlcmd prompt, type the following command:

GO

The command prompt appears as shown in Figure 10-34.





Press enter to execute the command to backup the database. The output appears as shown in Figure 10-35.
ES SQLCMD	- D ×
Microsoft Windows XP [Version 5.1.2600] (C) Copyright 1985-2001 Microsoft Corp.	<b>_</b>
C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator>sqlcmd 1> BACKUP DAIABASE [iserver] TO DISK = N'C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL S \MSSQLIA.HSSQLSENUER\MSSQLNBackup\;iserver.bak' WITH NOFORMAT, NOINIT, NAME iserver-Full Database Backup', SKIP, NOREWIND, NOUNLOAD, STATS = 10 >> co	erver = N'
14 percent processed. 24 percent processed. 34 percent processed. 44 percent processed.	
54 percent processed. 64 percent processed. 74 percent processed. 84 percent processed.	
74 percent processed. Processed 160 pages for database 'iserver', file 'iserver' on file 1. 100 percent processed. Processed 1 pages for database 'iserver', file 'iserver_log' on file 1. BACKUP DATABASE successfully processed 161 pages in 0.052 seconds (24.188 M	1B∕sec
·· _	<b>-</b>

Figure 10-35 Executing the command to back up the metadata

**4** To end the sqlcmd session, type the following command at the sqlcmd prompt:

EXIT

After backing up the Encyclopedia volume metadata, back up the acserverconfig.xml file and volume data directories to the backup directory by performing the following tasks.

#### How to back up the volume data folders

1 Open Windows Explorer and navigate to AC\_DATA\_HOME. This is the location of the iServer data. The administrator specified this location on Setup Type during the install. The default path for AC\_DATA\_HOME is:

C:\Actuate11\iServer\data

**2** Navigate to the config folder that contains the acserverconfig.xml file. In Actuate 11 Service Pack 3, this file is located in the following subfolder:

C:\Actuate\iServer\data\config\11SP3

Select acserverconfig.xml, right-click, and choose Copy.

Copy this file to the following backup location:

C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup

**3** In AC\_DATA\_HOME, navigate to the encyc folder. Select the file, fileType, status, and tempRov directories, right-click, and choose Copy. Copy these directories to the following backup location:

C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup

In a backup taken immediately after an iServer installation where there has been no activity on the system, the status or tempRov directories may not exist. These directories contain information about job details and completion notices and do not appear until a job executes. If these directories are not present in the environment, simply back up the file and fileType directories.

The contents of the backup folder appear as shown in Figure 10-36.



Figure 10-36 Viewing the backed up files

# Restoring an Encyclopedia volume using SQL Server Management Studio

To restore a backed-up Encyclopedia volume, perform the following tasks:

- Take the Encyclopedia offline
- Delete the acserverconfig.xml file and volume data folders in AC\_DATA\_HOME
- Copy the backed up acserverconfig.xml file and volume data folders from the backup folder to AC\_DATA\_HOME
- Back up the tail of the transaction log
- Restore the Encyclopedia volume metadata using SQL Server Management Studio, or execute the appropriate commands using sqlcmd from a command prompt
- Take the Encyclopedia online

Take the Encyclopedia volume offline by performing the following tasks.

## How to take the Encyclopedia volume offline

- 1 Log in to Configuration Console. On the Simple view, choose Advanced View. Choose Volumes.
- **2** On Volumes, take the volume offline, as shown in Figure 10-37.

Curteri	Volumes				
System			upon selected item	s	
Servers	📕 Metadata Database	Schema	Туре	🗖 Volume	Status
-	■▼ Default SQLServer MetadataDatal	<u>base</u> ≣‴ <u>ac corp</u>	Volume	□ ≡r <u>corp</u>	ONLINE
Server		≣‴ <u>ac corp syste</u> r	n System	Properti	es
Templates	Legend			Take off	line
Volumes	Changes pending require volume re	start to take effect			

Figure 10-37 Taking the volume offline

## How to restore the backed up volume data folders

- 1 In Windows Explorer, navigate to AC\_DATA\_HOME.
- **2** Navigate to the config folder that contains the acserverconfig.xml file. In Actuate 11 Service Pack 3, this file is located in the following subfolder:

```
C:\Actuate\iServer\data\config\11SP3
```

Select acserverconfig.xml, right-click, and choose Delete. Confirm the deletion.

**3** In AC\_DATA\_HOME, navigate to the encyc folder.

In AC\_DATA\_HOME\encyc, select the file and fileType, status, and tempRov folders, right-click, then choose Delete. Confirm the deletion.

In a backup taken immediately after an iServer installation where there has been no activity on the system, the status or tempRov folders may not exist.

4 In Windows Explorer, navigate to the following location:

```
C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc_backup
```

**5** Right-click acserverconfig.xml, choose Copy, and copy this file to AC\_DATA\_HOME\config\11SP3.In C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup, select the file, filetype, status, and tempRov folders, right-click, choose Copy, and copy these folders to AC\_DATA\_HOME\encyc.

Before restoring a full database backup, you must backup the tail of the transaction log. A backup taken of the tail of the transaction log just before a restore operation is called a tail-log backup.

## How to back up the tail of the transaction log

- On Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio, in Object Explorer, expand Databases. Right-click the database named iserver and choose Tasks→Back Up.
- **2** On Back Up Database—General, perform the following tasks:
  - 1 In the Source section, in Database, select iserver.
  - 2 In Backup type, select Transaction Log.
  - 3 Leave Copy Only Backup unselected.

- 4 In the Backup set section, in Name, accept the default value as the name for the backup set. Alternatively, type a different name.
- **5** In Description, type an optional description for the backup set.
- **6** For Backup set will expire, in After, accept the default value of 0 to specify that the backup set will not expire and cannot be overwritten. Alternatively, specify a number of days after which the backup set expires and can be overwritten.

Optionally, select On to specify an expiration date for the backup set.

- 7 In the Destination section, for Back up to, accept the default value of Disk.
- 8 Accept the default backup destination.

📄 Back Up Database - iserver - 🗆 🗵 Select a page 式 Script 👻 📑 Help 🔗 General P Options Source • Database iserver Recovery model: • Backup type: Copy Only Backup Backup component: © Database C Files and filegroups Backup set Name iserver-Transaction Log Backup Description: Backup set will expire: After: ÷ 0 days -O 0n: 9/16/2011 Destination Server C Tape O Disk URUP Back up to: C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup\iserver.b Connection: URUP\Administrator Add. View connection properties Remove Progress Contents Ready ΟK Cancel

Back Up Database—General appears as shown in Figure 10-38.

**Figure 10-38** Choosing to back up the transaction log In Select a page, choose Options.

**3** On Back Up Database—Options, perform the following tasks:

- 1 In the Overwrite media section, accept the default option, Back up to the existing media set. For Back up to the existing media set, accept the default option, Append to the existing backup set.
- **2** In the Reliability section, accept the default value of unselected for all options. Alternatively, select any combination of these options.
- **3** In the Transaction log section, select Back up the tail of the log, and leave the database in the restoring state.
- 4 In the Compression section, in Set backup compression, accept the default value of Use the default server setting. The default value is Do not compress the backup.
- **5** If you want SQL Server Management Studio to generate and display the Transact-SQL statements that the backup operation executes, left-click on the arrow next to Script and choose Script Action to New Query Window as shown in Figure 10-39.

🗍 Back Up Database - iserve	er						
Select a page	🔄 Script 👻 📑 Help	🔄 Script 🗸 📑 Help					
General	度 Script Action to New Query Window	Ctrl+Shift+N					
	Script Action to File	Ctrl+Shift+F					
	Script Action to Clipboard	Ctrl+Shift+C					
	Script Action to Job	Ctrl+Shift+M					
	<ul> <li>Overwrite all existing backup sets</li> </ul>						
	Check media set name and backup	set expiration					

Figure 10-39 Choosing to display Transact-SQL statements

Back Up Database—Options appears as shown in Figure 10-40.

🗍 Back Up Database - iserve	er 📃	١×
Select a page	🔄 Script 👻 📑 Help	
Select a page	Script   Help  Overwrite media  Back up to the existing media set  Append to the existing backup set  Overwrite all existing backup sets  Check media set name and backup set expiration  Media set name:  Back up to a new media set, and erase all existing backup sets  New media set name:  Reliability  Balability	
Connection Server: URUP	Verify backup when finished  Verify backup when finished  Continue on error  Transaction log  Truncate the transaction log	
Connection: URUP\Administrator View connection properties Progress	Evack up the fail of the log, and leave the database in the restoring state     Tape drive     Unload the tape after backup     Rewind the tape before unloading     Compression	
Scripting completed successfully.	Set backup compression: Use the default server setting	] ]

Figure 10-40 Configuring Back Up Database—Options

Choose OK.

**4** In the dialog box stating that the backup operation completed successfully, choose OK, as shown in Figure 10-41.



Figure 10-41 Acknowledging the successful backup operation

Alternatively, you can also backup the tail of the transaction log using the sqlcmd utility. The following example duplicates the operations performed in the previous section using the graphical SQL Server administration tool, SQL Server Management Studio. You do not need to do both activities.

# How to back up of the tail of the transaction log using sqlcmd from a command prompt

**1** Open a command prompt.

**2** To connect with the default instance of SQL Server running on your machine, type the following command and press enter:

sqlcmd

**3** At the sqlcmd prompt, type the following command and press enter:

BACKUP LOG [iserver] TO DISK = N'C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL10.MSSQLSERVER\MSSQL\Backup\iserver.bak' WITH NO\_TRUNCATE, NOFORMAT, NOINIT, NAME = N'iserver-Transaction Log Backup', SKIP, NOREWIND, NOUNLOAD, NORECOVER, STATS = 10

At the sqlcmd prompt, type the following command:

GO

The command prompt appears as shown in Figure 10-42.



Figure 10-42 Typing the command to backup the tail of the log

Press enter to execute the command to backup the tail of the transaction log. The output appears as shown in Figure 10-43.



Figure 10-43 Executing the command to back up the tail of the log

**4** To end the sqlcmd session, type the following command at the sqlcmd prompt:

EXIT

When restoring the Encyclopedia volume metadata, you must also restore the tail of the log backup. Restore both of these backups by performing the following tasks.

# How to restore a back up of the Encyclopedia volume metadata using SQL Server Management Studio

1 On Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio, in Object Explorer, expand Databases. Right-click the database named iserver and choose Tasks→Restore→Database, as shown in Figure 10-44.

K Microsoft SQL Server Manager	nent Studio		
File Edit View Project Debut	g Tools Window Communi	ity Help	
New Query 🕒 📸 📆			
	- ? Execute 🕨 🔳 🗸		
Object Explorer	→ Ŧ × SQLQue	rv3.sql - Administrator (54))	• X
Connect - 🗐 🗐 🔳 👅 🖉 🗟	BACK	UP LOG [iserver] TO DISK = N'	C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQ
ALTDBSQLSRVR (SQL Server     Databases     System Databases     Database Snapshots	10.0.1600 - ALTDE GO		
iserver (Restoring)	New Database		
Security      Server Objects	New Query		
🕀 🧰 Replication	Script Database as 🔹 🕨		
H      Management     Management     SOL Server Agent	Tasks +	Detach	1
	Policios	T   0///	-
	Fondes F		
		Bring Unline	
	Start PowerShell	Shrink 🕨	
	Reports +	Back Up	
	Rename	Restore +	Database
	Delete	Mirror	Files and Filegroups
	Befrech	Launch Database Mirroring Monitor	Transaction Log
	Properties	Ship Transaction Logs	
		Generate Scripts	
		Publish using Web Service	
		Import Data	
		Export Data	
	► Conne	Copy Database	SRVR\Administr master 00:00:00 0 rows
Ready		Manage Database Encryption	

Figure 10-44 Choosing to restore the database

- **2** On Restore Database—General, perform the following tasks:
  - 1 In the Destination for restore section, in To database, select iserver.
  - 2 In To a point in time, accept the default of Most recent possible. Alternatively, click on the ellipsis next to Most recent possible. On Point in time restore, specify a specific date and time to which to restore the backup.
  - 3 In the Source for restore section, in From database, select iserver.
  - 4 In Select the backup sets to restore, select both the Full database backup and the Transaction log backup.

Restore Database—General appears as shown in Figure 10-45.

Restore Database - iserver										
Select a page	🔄 Script 👻 📑	Help								
General Options	Destination for restore									
	Select or ty	Select or type the name of a new or existing database for your restore operation.								
	To databas	;e:	iserver			•				
	To a point	in time:	Most re	cent possible						
	Source for rest	tore								
	Coopily the	source and legation of bad	un ook	to restore						
	Specily the		cup sets	no restore.						
	• From da	itabase:	iserver							
	C From de	evice:								
	Select the	backup sets to restore:								
	Restore	Name		Component	Type	Serv				
		iserver-Full Database Back iserver-Transaction Log. B	kup ackup	Database	Full Transaction Log (Copy Only)	ALT				
Connection		Norrol Handdolon 20g D	dontap		Handalion zog (copy only)					
Server: URUP						- 1				
Connection: URUP\Administrator										
View connection properties						- 1				
Program						- 1				
Ready										
The state of the s	•					▶				
					OK Cano					

Figure 10-45 Configuring Restore Database—General

In Select a page, choose Options.

- **3** On Restore Database—Options, perform the following tasks:
  - 1 In the Restore options section, accept the default value of unselected for all options. Alternatively, select any combination of these options.
  - **2** In the Recovery state section, select Leave the database ready to use by rolling back uncommitted transactions. Alternatively, select one of the other options.
  - **3** If you want SQL Server Management Studio to generate and display the Transact-SQL statements that the backup operation executes, left-click on the arrow next to Script and choose Script Action to New Query Window.

Restore Database—Options appears as shown in Figure 10-46.

Restore Database - iserver			
Select a page	🔄 Script 👻 📑 Help		
Ceneral	Restore options	(WITH REPLACE) (WITH KEEP_REPL ckup latabase (WITH RES	ICATION) TRICTED_USER)
	Original File Name	File Type	Restore As
	C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL	Rows Data	C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL
	C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL	Log	C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL
	Recovery state C Leave the database ready to use transaction logs cannot be restor	e by rolling back unce ed.(RESTORE WITH	ommitted transactions. Additional H RECOVERY)
Connection Server: UBUP	<ul> <li>Leave the database non-operation transaction logs can be restored.</li> </ul>	onal, and do not roll b (RESTORE WITH N	pack uncommitted transactions. Additional IORECOVERY)
Connection: URUP\Administrator	<ul> <li>Leave the database in read-only actions in a standby file so that re</li> </ul>	mode. Undo uncomr ecovery effects can t	mitted transactions, but save the undo be reversed.(RESTORE WITH STANDBY)
View connection properties Progress	Standby file:		
Scripting completed successfully.	The Full-Text Upgrade Option rebuilt, or reset.	server property cont	rols whether full-text indexes are imported,
			OK Cancel

Figure 10-46 Configuring Restore Database—Options

Choose OK.

In the dialog box stating that the restore operation completed successfully, choose OK, as shown in Figure 10-47.

Microsoft	SQL Server Management Studio	×
Ū,	The restore of database 'iserver' completed successfully.	
Lia .		ОК

Figure 10-47 Acknowledging the successful restore operation

Alternatively, you can restore an Encyclopedia volume schema using the sqlcmd utility. The following example duplicates the operations performed in the previous section using the graphical SQL Server administration tool, SQL Server Management Studio. You do not need to do both activities.

# How to restore a backup of the Encyclopedia volume metadata using sqlcmd from a command prompt

**1** Open a command prompt.

**2** To connect with the default instance of SQL Server running on your machine, type the following command and press enter:

sqlcmd

**3** At the sqlcmd prompt, type the following command and press enter:

```
RESTORE DATABASE [iserver] FROM DISK = N'C:\Program Files\
Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL10.MSSQLSERVER\MSSQL\Backup\
iserver.bak' WITH FILE = 1, NORECOVERY, NOUNLOAD, STATS = 10
```

At the sqlcmd prompt, type the following command:

GO

The command prompt appears as shown in Figure 10-48





Press enter to execute the command to restore the backup of the metadata. The output appears as shown in Figure 10-49.

as SQLCMD	- II ×
Microsoft Windows XP [Version 5.1.2600] (C) Copyright 1985-2001 Microsoft Corp.	<b>^</b>
C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator>sqlcnd 1> RESTORE DATABASE Liserver1 FROM DISK = N'C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL S r\MSSQL10.MSSQLSERVER\MSSQL\Backup\iserver.bak' WITH FILE = 1, NORECOUERY, N OAD, STATS = 10 2> GO	Serve NOUNL
14 percent processed. 24 percent processed. 34 percent processed. 44 percent processed. 54 percent processed.	
64 percent processed. 74 percent processed. 84 percent processed. 94 percent processed. 100 percent processed.	
Processed 160 pages for database 'iserver', file 'iserver' on file 1. Processed 1 pages for database 'iserver', file 'iserver_log' on file 1. RESTORE DATABASE successfully processed 161 pages in 0.206 seconds <6.105 ME ). 1>	8∕sec
	-



**4** To restore the tail of the transaction log backup, type the following command at the sqlcmd prompt and press enter:

```
RESTORE LOG [iserver] FROM DISK = N'C:\Program Files\Microsoft
SQL Server\MSSQL10.MSSQLSERVER\MSSQL\Backup\iserver.bak' WITH
FILE = 2, NOUNLOAD, STATS = 10
```

At the sqlcmd prompt, type the following command:

GO

The command prompt appears as shown in Figure 10-50.





Press enter to execute the command to restore the tail of the log backup. The output appears as shown in Figure 10-51.

EX SQLCMD	
Processed 160 pages for database 'iserver', file 'iserver' on file 1. Processed 1 pages for database 'iserver', file 'iserver_log' on file 1. RESTORE DATABASE successfully processed 161 pages in 0.206 seconds <6.105 M	▲ 1B∕sec
1) RESTORE LOG [iserver] FROM DISK = N'C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Serve QLI0.MSSQLSERVER\MSSQL\Backup\iserver.bak' WITH FILE = 2, NOUNLOAD, STATS = 2> GO	= 10
31 percent processed. 62 percent processed. 93 percent processed. 100 percent processed.	
Processed 0 pages for database 'iserver', file 'iserver' on file 2. Processed 26 pages for database 'iserver', file 'iserver_log' on file 2. RESIORE LOG successfully processed 26 pages in 0.047 seconds (4.249 MB/sec)	-
	-

Figure 10-51 Executing the command to restore the tail of the log backup

**5** To end the sqlcmd session, type the following command at the sqlcmd prompt:

EXIT

Take the Encyclopedia volume online by performing the following tasks.

## How to take the Encyclopedia volume online

- 1 Log in to Configuration Console. On the Simple view, choose Advanced View. Choose Volumes.
- 2 On the Simple view, choose Advanced view. Choose Volumes.
- **3** On Volumes, take the volume online, as shown in Figure 10-52.

Custom	Volumes		
System	≣* Act upon selected items	3	
Servers	🖶 Metadata Database Schema Type	📕 Volume	Status
	≣r <u>Default SQLServer MetadataDatabase</u> ≣r <u>ac corp</u> Volume	□ ≡* <u>corp</u>	OFFLINE
Server Configuration	≣r <u>ac corp system</u> System	Propert	ties
Templates	Legend	Take of	nline
Volumes	Changes pending require volume restart to take effect	Remov	re

Figure 10-52 Taking the volume online

For more information about backing up and restoring an Encyclopedia volume schema using the Microsoft SQL Server database utilities, go to the following location:

http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms189621.aspx

# Backing up and restoring an Encyclopedia volume that uses a DB2 database

To back up an Encyclopedia volume in the DB2 RDBMS environment, the administrator performs the following operations:

- Backs up Encyclopedia volume metadata using the DB2 Control Center graphical administration tool or the DB2 command line processor utility
- Backs up Encyclopedia volume data and configuration files using operating system copy commands

To restore an Encyclopedia volume in the DB2 RDBMS environment, the administrator performs the following operations:

 Restores Encyclopedia volume data and configuration files using operating system copy commands  Restores Encyclopedia volume metadata using the SQL Server Control Center graphical administration tool or the DB2 command line processor utility

The following sections show how to perform these backup and restore operations.

# Backing up an Encyclopedia volume using DB2 Control Center

To back up an Encyclopedia volume, perform the following tasks:

- Create a folder to contain the backup files
- Back up Encyclopedia volume metadata using DB2 Control Center
- Back up the acserverconfig.xml file and volume data folders to the backup folder.

Create a folder to contain the volume data backup files outside the iServer data installation environment. To provide protection against single-point media failure, it is best to store the backup files on a partition that is physically separate from the Encyclopedia volume data location.

In a Windows environment, create a folder to contain the volume data backup files by performing the following tasks.

## How to create a new backup folder

- 1 Open Windows Explorer.
- 2 In Windows Explorer, choose File→New→Folder repeatedly to create a set of nested folders in the following location:

C: Actuate iServer encyc backup

Figure 10-53 shows the new folder.



Figure 10-53 Creating a new folder named encyc\_backup

Backup Encyclopedia volume metadata using the DB2 graphical administration tool, Control Center, by performing the following tasks.

How to create a backup of the Encyclopedia volume metadata using DB2 Control Center

- 1 Choose Start→Programs→IBM DB2→DB2COPY1 (Default)→General Administration Tools→Control Center.
- **2** On Control Center, in Object View, navigate to the Databases folder. Select the ISERVER database, right-click, and choose Backup, as shown in Figure 10-54.

Control Center - DB2COPY1	Backup								
Control Center Selected Edit Vie	Restore		1.12						
	Roll-forward								
	Stop roll-forwar	i							
C Object View	Show Explainer	Statements History							
Control Center	Explain Query	,							
All Systems	Generate DDL.								
	Manage Chara	- •	\$						
	Applications	• •							
	Activitu Monitor								
E C Databases	Spatial Extende	r 🕨							
	Net Search Ext	ender 🕨							
	Web Services	•							
🖃 🛅 All Databases	Open Satellite /	dministration Center							
ISERVER									
E- TOOLSDB	Herresh			1.4	ol. ac	AND NO	N		<b>^</b>
		2 of 2 items di	isplayed	Ĵ	학원 전국	HA K	R	Default View	View
		🕄 Control Cer	nter						⑦ Help ×
		Actions:		c	urrent vi	ew of the	Contr	ol Center: Adva	anced
		👥 Customize Co	ntrol Center						
		••							
1		•		•					

Figure 10-54 Choosing to backup the ISERVER database

**3** On Backup Wizard—Introduction, select Backup entire database, as shown in Figure 10-55. Choose Next.

🔓 Backup Wiza	ırd	X
1. Introduction	Confirm the detail	ls of your database.
<ol> <li>Image</li> <li>Options</li> </ol>	This wizard helps you create a you want to backup. If not clic	$\underline{backup}$ task for the database named below. Check to insure that the database listed below is the one that $\underline{k}$ Cancel.
4. Performance 5. Schedule 6. Summary	The logging type of your datal offline backup of the entire da <u>Task Overview</u> . Click next to continue.	pase affects the backup options that are available to you. If you use circular logging you can perform only an tabase. You can modify the logging type of your database through the Configure Database Logging Wizard.
	Database :	ALTOROR2 - DR2 - ISERVER
	Database State :	INCONSISTENT
	Last Backup Time :	2011-10-04 16:16:17
	Automatic Database Backup :	Disabled
	Logging Type :	ARCHIVE
	Online Backup Available : Table Space Backup Available :	YES U
	<ul> <li>Backup entire database</li> </ul>	
	C Backup selected table spa	aces
		Next  Finish Cancel

Figure 10-55 Confirming the details of the ISERVER database

**4** On Backup Wizard—Image, in Media Type, select File System, then select Add, as shown in Figure 10-56.

P <sub>a</sub> Backup Wiza	rd 🔀
1. Introduction	Specify where to store your backup image.
2. Image	Specify the type of media on which your backup image will be stored and the associated options.
4. Porformance	
5. Schedule	Media Type File System
6. Summary	
	Add
	Change
	Remove
	#Back Nevt b Finish Cancel

Figure 10-56 Choosing to add a backup location

**5** In Path Brower, navigate to the following location, as shown in Figure 10-57.

C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup

Path Browser	- ALTDBDB2					D	×
Look in	📋 encyc_backup	•	t I	<u> </u>	1233	000	
		_					
Directory name	C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc_backup				OK		
Files of type	All Files (*.*)	~		C	ancel		



Choose OK. Backup Wizard—Image appears as shown in Figure 10-58.

Backup Wiza	nd X
1. Introduction	Specify where to store your backup image.
2. Image	Specify the type of media on which your backup image will be stored and the associated options.
3. Options	
4. Performance	
5. Schedule	Media Type File System 🔽
6. Summary	
	C:\Actuate\;Server\encyc_backup Add
	Remove
	$ \rightarrowtail ( \bigcirc ( \bigcirc ) ) $
1	
	▲Back     Next ▶     Finish     Cancel

Figure 10-58Viewing the chosen metadata backup locationChoose Next.

- **6** On Backup Wizard—Options, perform the following tasks:
  - 1 In the Backup Type section, accept the default option, Full Backup.
  - 2 In the Availability section, select Online.
  - 3 In the Compression section, select Compress backup image.
  - 4 Backup Wizard—Options appears as shown in Figure 10-59.

🔒 Backup Wiza	rd X	1
1. Introduction	Choose your backup options.	1
2. Image 3. Options	Specify the backup type and whether you want to perform an online or offline backup. If you select to back up offline, you can also choose to quiesce the database before the backup to remove users from the system.	
4. Performance	-Backup Type	1
5. Schedule 6. Summary	Full Backup - Back up all data	l
	C Incremental - Back up data that has changed since the last full backup	1
	C Delta - Back up data that has changed since the most recent backup	
	Availability	
	Online - Users can access the database during the backup	1
	T Include log files in backup image	1
	C Offline - Users cannot access the database during the backup	l
	Quiesce Database	l
	Quiesce the database before initiating the offline operation	
	Throttle	1
	Throttle this utility to regulate the performance impact on the database workload.	1
	Set Priority	l
	Compression	l
	Compress backup image	l
	Back Next      Finish Cancel	

Figure 10-59 Configuring the backup options

Choose Next

7 On Backup Wizard—Performance, in the Buffers section, accept the recommended default values, as shown in Figure 10-60. Alternatively, select different values.

Backup Wiza	ard				x
1. Introduction	Specify performance optio	ns for the bad	kup.		
2. Image	Specify the parallelism (the number of buffer	r manipulators), number	of buffers and the size of e	ach buffer for th	e backup. All of these
3. Options	options affect the performance of the backu entered in the wizard. If you change any va	ip operation. The values lues on this page you mi	displayed are recommende ay click Recommend again to	d based on value have the wizard	s you have already I recalculate the values.
5. Schedule	Buffers				
6. Summary	Total Number of Backup Destinations:	1			
	Total Number of Table Spaces to Backup:	4			
	Parallelism	14	(Recommended)		
	Number of Buffers	2	(Recommended)		
	Size of Each Buffer in 4K pages	1024	(Recommended)		
	Size of Zaanbarrer in httpages		(recommended)		
		Recommend			
		1xccommond			
			♦ Back	Next 🕨	Finish Cancel

Figure 10-60 Specifying performance options

Choose Next.

**8** On Backup Wizard—Schedule, accept the default values, as shown in Figure 10-61. Alternatively, specify different values.

🖡 Backup Wiza	ard X
1. Introduction	Scheduling task execution
2. Image 3. Options	You can select whether to execute the commands immediately or create a task in the Task Center. Creating a task allows you to schedule task execution and maintain its history.
4. Performance 5. Schedule	Run now without saving task history
6. Summary	C Create this as a task in the Task Center
	Run System ALTDBDB2
	Scheduler System ALTDBDB2 Advanced
	Task name Backup - 10/4/11 6:01:38 PM PL
	C Save task only
	🙃 Save and run task now
	C Schedule task execution
	Details
	Change
	Dunkima sukharishina
	User ID
	Password

Figure 10-61 Selecting scheduling options

Choose Next.

**9** On Backup Wizard—Summary, review the backup job parameters, as shown in Figure 10-62. Choose Back to change any backup job parameters, or choose Show Command to view the command that executes the backup.

Backup Wiza	rd	X
1. Tabua duatian	Douiou the	actions that will take place when you dick Finish
2. Image 3. Options	When you click Fini appropriate page in	actions that will take place when you click Finish. sh, the wizard creates a job that will backup your database. To change any of the parameters go back to the nits wizard. or wire the equivalent backup command, click the Show Command button.
4. Performance 5. Schedule	Backup Database :	ALTOBOB2 - DB2 - ISERVER
6. Summary	Image Media : Backup Location :	FILE SYSTEM C:\Actuate\JServer\encyc_backup
	Backup Type : Availability :	FULL ONLINE
	Compress : Include log files : Parallelism : Number of Buffers : Size of Buffers :	Ves No 1 2 1024
	Show Command	Back Finish Cancel

Figure 10-62 Reviewing backup job parameters

Choose Finish to execute the backup. The elapsed time for the backup job displays, as shown in Figure 10-63

Progress X
Backup - ISERVER
Elapsed time
00:00:04
Close

Figure 10-63 Viewing the elapsed time for the backup job

When the backup job completes, DB2 displays the commands that the job executed, and an end-of-job message, as shown in Figure 10-64.



Figure 10-64 Viewing the commands executed and end-of-job messages

Alternatively, you can also backup the Encyclopedia volume metadata using the command line processor utility. The following example duplicates the operations performed in the previous section using the graphical administration tool, DB2 Control Center. You do not need to do both activities.

# How to create a backup of the Encyclopedia volume metadata using the DB2 command line processor

1 Choose Start→Programs→IBM DB2→DB2COPY1 (Default)→Command Line Tools→Command Line Processor.

The command line processor appears, as shown in Figure 10-65.



Figure 10-65 Opening the command line processor

**2** Execute each of the following commands to perform an online backup of the entire database and compress the backup image, as shown in Figure 10-66: BACKUP DATABASE ISERVER ONLINE

```
TO "C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc_backup"

WITH 2 BUFFERS BUFFER 1024 PARALLELISM 1

COMPRESS WITHOUT PROMPTING

Compared time Processor for DB2 Client 9.7.0

You can issue database manager commands and SQL statements from the command

prompt. For example:

db2 => bind sample.bnd

For general help, type: ?.

For command help, type: ?.

For command help, type: ?.

For command help, type: ?.

CoffALOG DATBH&EF for help on the CATALOG DATABHSE command.

? CATALOG DATABHSE for help on all of the CATALOG DATABHSE command.

To exit db2 interactive mode, type QUIT at the command. Outside

interactive mode, all commands be trigs, type LIST COMMAND OPTIONS.

For more detailed help, refer to the Online Reference Manual.

db2 => BACKUP DATABHSE ISERVER ONLINE TO "C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc_backup" WITH

Backup successful. The timestamp for this backup image is : 20111012185050

db2 => =
```

Figure 10-66 Executing the commands to back up the database

**3** To end the DB2 command line processor session, type the following command:

quit

After backing up the Encyclopedia volume metadata, back up the acserverconfig.xml file and volume data directories to the backup directory by performing the following tasks.

## How to back up the volume data folders

1 Open Windows Explorer and navigate to AC\_DATA\_HOME, which is the location of the iServer data. The administrator specified this location on Setup Type during the install. The default path for AC\_DATA\_HOME is:

C:\Actuate11\iServer\data

**2** Navigate to the config folder that contains the acserverconfig.xml file. In Actuate 11 Service Pack 3, this file is located in the following subfolder:

C:\Actuate\iServer\data\config\11SP3

Select acserverconfig.xml, right-click, and choose Copy.

Copy this file to the following backup location:

C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup

**3** Navigate to AC\_DATA\_HOME\encyc. Select the file, fileType, status, and tempRov directories, right-click, and choose Copy. Copy these directories to the following backup location:

C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup

In a backup taken immediately after an iServer installation where there has been no activity on the system, the status or tempRov directories may not exist. These directories contain information about job details and completion notices and do not appear until a job executes. If these directories are not present in the environment, simply back up the file and fileType directories.

The contents of the backup folder appear as shown in Figure 10-67.



Figure 10-67 Viewing the backed up files

# Restoring an Encyclopedia volume using DB2 Control Center

To restore a backed-up Encyclopedia volume, perform the following tasks:

- Take the Encyclopedia volume offline
- Delete the acserverconfig.xml file and volume data folders in AC\_DATA\_HOME
- Copy the backed up acserverconfig.xml file and volume data folders from the backup folder to AC\_DATA\_HOME
- Restore the Encyclopedia volume metadata using SQL Server Management Studio, or execute the appropriate commands using sqlcmd from a command prompt
- Take the Encyclopedia volume online

Take the Encyclopedia volume offline by performing the following tasks.

### How to take the Encyclopedia volume offline

- 1 Log in to Configuration Console. On the Simple view, choose Advanced View. Choose Volumes.
- **2** On Volumes, take the volume offline, as shown in Figure 10-68.

	C	Volumes				
	System		≣~ A	ct upon selected	items	
	Servers	🖶 Metadata Database	Schema	Туре	📕 Volume	Status
	-	■ Default SQLServer MetadataData	<u>base</u> ≣‴ <u>ac_corp</u>	Volume	□ ≡• <u>corp</u>	ONLINE
	Server Configuration		≣‴ <u>ac corp syste</u>	em System	Properti	es
p pr	Templates	Legend			Take off	ine
	Volumes	Changes pending require volume re	start to take effect			

Figure 10-68 Taking the volume offline

#### How to restore the backed up volume data folders

- 1 In Windows Explorer, navigate to AC\_DATA\_HOME.
- **2** Navigate to the config folder that contains the acserverconfig.xml file. In Actuate 11 Service Pack 3, this file is located in the following subfolder:

```
C:\Actuate\iServer\data\config\11SP3
```

Select acserverconfig.xml, right-click, and choose Delete. Confirm the deletion.

**3** Navigate to AC\_DATA\_HOME\encyc. Select the file and fileType, status, and tempRov folders, right-click, and choose Delete. Confirm the deletion.

In a backup taken immediately after an iServer installation where there has been no activity on the system, the status or tempRov folders may not exist.

**4** Navigate to the following location:

C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup

Right-click acserverconfig.xml, choose Copy, and copy this file to AC\_DATA\_HOME\config.

**5** In C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc\_backup, select the file, filetype, status, and tempRov folders, right-click, choose Copy, and copy these folders to AC\_DATA\_HOME\encyc.

# How to restore a back up of the Encyclopedia volume metadata using DB2 Control Center

1 On Control Center, in Object View, right-click the database named ISERVER and choose Restore, as shown in Figure 10-69.

Control Center - DB2C0PY1	Backup										F	
Control Center Selected Edit Vi	Restore		1									
1. 생 16 5 19 19	Roll-forward Stop roll-forward	<b>I</b>										
Diject View	Show Explained	Statements History										
Control Center	Explain Query											
🚊 🛅 All Systems	Generate DDL				_			_	_			
🗄 🛒 ALTDBDB2	Manage Storage	e 🕨										
🖻 🗂 Instances	Applications		I									
E- 🥰 DB2	Activity Monitor		I									
🖃 🗁 🛅 Databases	Spatial Extende	r 🕨	I									
	Net Search Exte	ender 🕨 🕨	I									
	Web Services	•										
🖻 👘 All Databases	Open Satellite A	dministration Center			с).	212	مىم	. a			•	
	Refresh		splayed	J°Ż	장문	đĐ	UHU	¥ I	7	Default View		View
		🕄 Control Cer	- nter								(?) <u>Hel</u>	p X
		Actions:			Curre	ent vie	w of t	he Co	ontra	ol Center: Adva	anced	
		Customize Co	ntrol Center									
		4		<b>F</b>								

Figure 10-69 Choosing to restore the database

**2** On Restore Data Wizard—Introduction, in the Restore alternatives section, accept the default value of Restore to an existing database, as shown in Figure 10-70. Choose Next.



Figure 10-70 Confirming the details of the ISERVER database

**3** On Restore Data Wizard—Restore Objects, accept the default selection, Restore the entire database, as shown inFigure 10-71. Choose Next.

Restore Dat	ta Wizard
1. Introduction	What would you like to restore?
2. Restore O	You can restore all of the table spaces in the database, or you can restore a subset of the table spaces by specifying them below.
3. Available I	C Datas the active databased
4. Containers	
5. Roll forward	Restore selected table spaces
5, Final State	Available Table Spaces Selected Table Spaces
8. Performance	Name Type of data > Name Type of data
9. Schedule	SYSCATSPACE Regular >>
10. Summary	SYSTOOLSPACE Large
	SYSTOOLSTMPSPACE User temporary <
	USERSPACE1 Large
	·
	■ Back Pinish Cancel

Figure 10-71 Selecting the backup image to restore

**4** On Restore Data Wizard—Available Images, in Available backup images, select the image you want to restore, as shown in

Restore Dat	Restore Data Wizard				
1. Introduction	Select the database backup image(s) to use.				
2. Restore O 3. Available I	The backup images that are recorded in the recovery history file are shown in the list below. Images in the selected image box will be included in the restore. If you select a date and move it to the selected images box, all of the images from that date will be moved.				
4. Containers 5. Roll forward	C Manually enter the backup image information				
6. Final State	<ul> <li>Select the backup images from the list provided</li> </ul>				
7. Options	Available backup images Selected backup images				
8. Performance 9. Schedule					
10. Summary	6:01:38 PM[Database ]				
	<<				
	【Back】 Next ▶ Finish Cancel				

Figure 10-72 Selecting the backup image to restore

Choose the right arrow to move the image to Selected backup images, as shown in Figure 10-73. Choose Next



Figure 10-73 Moving the selected image to Selected backup images

**5** On Restore Data Wizard—Containers, accept the default options, as shown in Figure 10-74. Choose Next.

Restore Data Wizard		
1. Introduction	Set non-automatic storage containers for redirected restore	
2. Restore O	Redirected restore allows you to change the table space containers of your database during restore. This might be useful when a container	
3. Available I	is inaccessible or when you are restoring a database to a machine that might not contain the same container paths.	
9. Containers	Enable table space containers to be redirected during the restore operation	
6. Final State	Allow new container creation during roll-forward	
7. Options		
8. Performance	Image with table space containers to be redirected	
9. Schedule	Table space with containers to be redirected <select></select>	
10. Summary	Table sparse using automatic storage are not available in the preceding Table	
	spaces with containers to be redirected field.	
	Container name de Turne de State de Catella	
	Change	
	Remove	
	0 of 0 items displayed	
	A Rock March Timite Connect	
	Calice	

Figure 10-74 Choosing whether to enable redirecting of table space containers

**6** On Restore Data Wizard—Roll forward, accept the default option, Restore Only, as shown in . Choose Next.

Restore Data Wizard X				
1. Introduction	Roll forward after r	estoring.		
2. Restore O	Rolling forward applies log files the	hat are more recent than the database image th	nat you are restoring. You can roll forward to the end of the	
3. Available I	logs or to a specific point in time.			
4. Containers	Restore Only	Restore Only		
5. Roll forward	C Restore the database and ro	l forward as follows		
7. Options				
8. Performance	Roll forward to the end of the logs			
9. Schedule	C Roll forward to a point in time - Local			
10. Summary	C Roll forward to a point in	time - GMT		
		Date Time		
	First Backup Image	11/04/2011 6:01:38 PM	Local	
	Roll forward to transaction	October 4, 2011 19:23:12	Local	
	-Retrieval of archived logs for ro	llforward		
	C Use default log location on	У		
	C Alternate locations for arch	ived logs		
		Add	9	
		Change		
		Remove		
	C Disable retrieval of archive	d logs during the rollforward		

Figure 10-75 Choosing to restore the database backup only

7 On Restore Data Wizard—Final State, select Complete the restore and return to the active state, as shown in . Choose Next.

Restore Dat	a Wizard	×
1. Introduction	Final State of the Database.	
2. Restore O	Select the desired state of the database after restore and roll forward.	
3. Available I		
5. Roll forward	C Leave in rollforward pending state	
6. Final State	G Complete the vectors and volum to the active state	
7. Options	Complete the restore and return to the active state	
8. Performance		
9. Schedule		\$
10. Juninary		
		$\rightarrow$
		Finish Cancel

Figure 10-76 Choosing to complete the restore

**8** On Restore Data Wizard—Options, accept the default options, as shown in Figure 10-77. Choose Next.

Restore Data Wizard				
1. Introduction	Choose your restore options.			
2. Restore O	O data Data a			
3. Available I				
<ol> <li>Containers</li> <li>Roll forward</li> </ol>	Quiesce the database before initiating the offline operation			
6. Final State	History File			
7. Options	Replace history file			
8. Performance				
9. Schedule	Restore Log Files			
10. Summary	Restore log files			
	Log file directory			

Figure 10-77 Choosing restore options

**9** On Restore Data Wizard—Performance, accept the default values, as shown in Figure 10-78. Choose Next.
Restore Data	a Wizard			×
1. Introduction	Select performance options	for the restor	e.	
2. Restore O 3. Available I 4. Containers 5. Roll forward 6. Final State 7. Options 8. Refermance	Specify the parallelism (the number of buffer me options affect the performance of the restore o entered in the wizard. If you change any value: Buffers Total Number of Restore Locations: Total Number of Table Spaces to Restore:	anipulators), number o operation. The values ( s on this page you may 1 4	f buffers and the size of each displayed are recommended ba y click Recommend again to har	buffer for the restore. All of these sed on values you have already ve the wizard recalculate the values.
9. Schedule 10. Summary	Parallelism Number of Buffers Size of Each Buffer in 4K pages	2 <b>4</b> 1024 <b>4</b>	(Recommended) (Recommended) (Recommended)	
		Recommend		
			<b>€</b> Back	Next 🕨 Finish Cancel

Figure 10-78 Selecting performance options

**10** On Restore Data Wizard—Schedule, accept the default values, as shown in Figure 10-79. Choose Next.

Restore Dat	a Wizard	×
1. Introduction	Scheduling task execution	
2. Restore O	You can select whether to execute the commands immediately or create a task in the Task Center. Creating a task allows you to schedule	
3. Available I	task execution and maintain its history.	
4. Containers	Run now without saving task history	
6. Final State	C Create this as a task in the Task Center	
7. Options		
8. Performance	Run System ALIDBDB2	
9. Schedule	Scheduler System ALTDBDB2 Advanced	
10. Summary	Task name Restore - 10/4/11 7:23:14 PM P	
	C Save task only	
	C Save and run task now	
	C Schedule task execution	
	Details	
	Change	
	Deserved	
	Password	
	Back Next      Finish Cance	

Figure 10-79 Setting backup job scheduling options

**11** On Restore Data Wizard—Summary, review the restore job parameters, as shown in Figure 10-80. Choose Back to change any restore job parameters, or choose Show Command to view the SQL that executes the restore.

Restore Data Wizard 🗴							
1. Introduction	Review the actions that will take place when you click Finish.						
2. Restore O 3. Available I	When you click Finish, the wizard will restore the database. To change any of the parameters below, go back to the appropriate page in the wizard. To view the command that will be run, click Show Command.						
4. Containers	Database name:	ISERVER					
5. Roll forward	Restore Type:	Existing					
7. Optiops							
8. Performance	Redirected restore:	No					
9. Schedule	Roll forward after restoring:	No					
10. Summary	Final state of the Database:	Return to active state					
	Replace history file:	No					
	Restore log files:	No					
	Parallelism:	1					
	Number of Buffers:	2	<b>v</b>				
	Size of the Buffers:	1024					
	Show Command	4 Back	Finish Cancel				

Figure 10-80 Reviewing restore job parameters

Choose Finish to execute the restore. The elapsed time for the restore job displays, as shown in Figure 10-81.

Progress X
Restore - ISERVER Elapsed time
00:00:03
Close



When the job completes, DB2 displays the commands that the job executed, and an end-of-job message, as shown in Figure 10-82.



Figure 10-82 Viewing the command executed and end-of-job messages

Alternatively, you can also restore the Encyclopedia volume metadata using the command line processor utility. The following example duplicates the operations performed in the previous section using the graphical administration tool, DB2 Control Center. You do not need to do both activities.

## How to restore a backup of the Encyclopedia volume metadata using the DB2 command line processor

1 Choose Start→Programs→IBM DB2→DB2COPY1 (Default)→Command Line Tools→Command Line Processor.

The command line processor appears, as shown in Figure 10-83.



Figure 10-83 Opening the command line processor

**2** Execute the following command, as shown in Figure 10-84:

```
RESTORE DATABASE ISERVER FROM "C:\Actuate\iServer\encyc_backup"
TAKEN AT 20111002141320 WITH 2 BUFFERS BUFFER 1024
PARALLELISM 1 WITHOUT PROMPTING;
```

where

20111002141320

is the last node in the name of the iServer backup file, C:\Actuate\iServer \encyc\_backup\ISERVER.0.DB2.NODE0000.CATN0000.20111002141320.001.



Figure 10-84 Restoring the database from the command line

**3** To end the DB2 session, type the following command:

quit

Take the Encyclopedia volume online by performing the following tasks.

#### How to take the Encyclopedia volume online

- 1 Log in to Configuration Console. On the Simple view, choose Advanced View. Choose Volumes.
- **2** On Volumes, take the volume online, as shown in Figure 10-85.

G System	Eustom	Volumes				
	System		≣ <b>▼</b> Ac	t upon selected	litems	
	Servers	🖶 Metadata Database	Schema	Туре	📕 Volume	Status
	-		i <u>Database</u> ≣* <u>ac_corp_</u>	Volume	□ ≡* <u>corp</u>	OFFLINE
Conf Tem	Server Configuration		≣‴ <u>ac corp syster</u>	m_System	Prope	rties
	Templates	Legend			Take	online
	Volumes	Changes pending require volume	me restart to take effect		Remo	ve



For more information about backing up and restoring an Encyclopedia volume schema using the DB2 database utilities, go to the following location:

http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/data/library/techarticle/ dm-0910db2incrementalbackup/index.html

# Index

## Α

AC\_DATA\_HOME directory 190 AC\_DATA\_HOME variable 29, 116, 190 AC\_JAVA\_HOME variable 46, 186 AC\_JRE\_HOME variable 46 AC\_JRE64\_HOME variable 46 AC\_JVM\_HOME variable 46 AC\_PMD\_WINDOWS\_CPUS variable 231, 232 AC\_SERVER\_HOME parameter 142, 144 AC\_SERVER\_HOME variable 29, 116, 135, 186, 189 AC\_TEMPLATE\_NAME variable 177 access permissions. See privileges accessing data 13 Encyclopedia system database 18 Encyclopedia volumes 47, 222, 224 help files x, xi help topics xi iServer features 46, 222 iServer System components 41 online help 215 pgAdmin administration tool 42, 98 PostgreSQL servers 41 resources 202 Update tool 212 Visual C++ libraries 185 web-based content 223, 224 accounts cluster configurations and 25 connecting to databases and 54, 57, 59, 61 installing alternate databases and 53 installing cluster nodes and 167 installing Information Console and 198 iServer 11 service and 34 iServer installations and 24, 25 Management Console and 34 managing 16 PostgreSQL database and 31 setting up e-mail 236 upgrades and 78,88

AcEncycUpgrade utility 18 AcExport utility 16 AcExtern utility 17 AcImport utility 17 AcIntern utility 17 acmachineid utility 228 AcMode utility 18 acpmdconfig.xml 13, 160, 176 Acrobat Catalog. See Adobe Acrobat Catalog acserverconfig.xml 13, 160 activity logs 203 AcToc utility 17 Actuate Analytics Option 223 Actuate Basic reports 224 Actuate Customer Support xi Actuate licensing options 222, 227 Actuate Query Option 223 Actuate Support Lifecycle Policy xii actuate.com vii ActuateBIRTiServer.exe 82, 101, 114 ActuateBIRTiServer.zip 186 ActuateBIRTiServerEnterprise.exe 27, 162 ActuateInformationConsole.exe 195 ActuateInformationConsole.war 201 ActuateiServerIntegrationTechnology.exe 20 8 ActuateLocalizationandOnlineDocumentatio n.exe 212 ActuateOne technology vii AcVerify utility 17 Add Partition link 134 Add Volume link 140 Add volume schema setting 135 adding administrator accounts 24, 78 backup folders 244, 266, 287 cluster nodes 13, 160, 175 desktop shortcuts 41, 96, 113, 187 e-mail accounts 236 Encyclopedia volumes 27, 140, 156, 157, 224 indexes 5 license keys 228

licensing options 227 passwords. See passwords PostgreSQL servers 42 user accounts 24, 25 users 52, 53, 54, 57, 59, 61 administration tools 16 administrative reports 19 administrator accounts 24, 34, 78 administrators backing up Encyclopedia and 241 customizing third-party databases and 18 deploying iServer images and 184 installing alternate databases and 52 installing iServer and 24, 45 managing Encyclopedia and 7 managing iServer System and 15 migrating to current release and 47, 49 obtaining licenses and 222 optimizing iServer System and 13, 160 preventing data loss and 7, 26 storing user information and 5 upgrading Encyclopedia and 133 upgrading iServer and 78, 79, 113 Adobe Acrobat Catalog utility xi aggregation 223 Analytics Option 223 analyzing data 223 search results 224 Apache Tomcat servers 195, 197 application pages. See web pages application programming interfaces (APIs) 19 application server cache 204 application server configurations 195, 202 application servers 195, 201, 204 See also servers APPLICATION\_USER\_NAME parameter 144 APPLICATION\_USER\_PASSWORD parameter 145 applications See also specific iServer application accessing Encyclopedia and 47 backward compatibility with 19 creating production environment for 48 creating test environments for 48

deploying web 204 developing 15 installing. See installation restricting CPU processes for 229 running iServer processes and 8 upgrades and 82 archives (cloud deployments) 6, 184 archiving iServer folders 187 report files 242 Archiving and Purging page 242 asynchronous Factory service 11 autoarchive file purging 242 automated installation option 6 automatic rollback 79 automatic upgrades 78, 80, 82

#### В

backing up data files 241 database schemas 7, 26, 249 Encyclopedia volumes 240–243, 244, 266, 287 folders 250, 273, 297 metadata 26, 62, 241 PostgreSQL databases 243 program files 82, 101 report files 17 system schemas 79, 150 volume databases 17 backup utilities 241 backward compatibility 19 Basic reports 224 batch files 138, 140 bin directory 189 binary files 29, 116, 189 BIRT 360 Option 223 BIRT Data Analyzer Option 223 BIRT Designer Professional 223 BIRT Exchange URL 27 BIRT Interactive Viewer Option 223 BIRT iServer. See iServer BIRT open source projects vii BIRT Option 223 BIRT Page Level Security option 223 BIRT reports. See reports

BIRT Spreadsheet Designer 223 BIRT Spreadsheet Option 223 BIRT Studio 202 BIRT Studio Option 223 BIRT Viewer 203 BIRT\_RESOURCE\_PATH parameter 202 BIRT\_VIEWER\_LOG\_DIR parameter 203 birt-exchange.com vii browsers. *See* web browsers browsing Encyclopedia volume database 41, 98 bulk load script files 154 bulk load ing utilitites 17 Business Intelligence technology vii

## С

C++ libraries 185 C++ runtime components 187 cache (data) 224 cache (web pages) 204 cache conflicts 204 Caching processes 233 Caching service 9, 11 CachingService element 233 changing cluster machines 229 CPU binding 234, 236 database schemas 98 databases 54, 57, 59, 61 default locales 202 license file names 229 licensing options 227 network cards 229 parameters 187 passwords 34 port numbers 31 time zones 203 volume metadata 5 volume names 153 character sets 19 charts 46, 223 CLASSPATH variable 47 clearing web browser cache 204 client applications 8, 15 client/server models 13 cloud deployments 6, 184–191

cluster IDs 13, 160 cluster nodes 8, 13, 29, 160, 162, 175 clusters adding nodes to 13, 160, 175 associating with machine IDs 225 binding iServer processes to 230 changing machines for 229 connecting to iServer System and 8 creating iServer images and 184 deploying web applications and 204 determining number of processors for 234 exceeding CPU licenses for 235 failing 13, 160 installing cluster nodes for 162–174 installing iServer for 29 licensing options for 225, 226 load balancing for 14, 160 running iServer processes and 13, 14 running iServer services and 8 setting configuration home location for 164 setting port numbers for 168 setting up Encyclopedia database for 13, 14 setting up user accounts for 25 storing information for 184 storing volume metadata and 5 collecting machine information 227 command-line options 16 command-line utilities 16, 243 comments 157 communications protocols (clusters) 175 config directory 165, 176 CONFIG\_SCHEMA\_NAME parameter 145 ConfigHomeDirectory variable 225, 229 Configuration Console accessing documentation for 16 adding cluster nodes and 180 archiving report files and 242 cluster configurations and 14 creating Encyclopedia and 140, 156, 157 creating system schemas and 135, 150 installing 164, 194 managing iServer and 188 sending notifications and 236 setting user names and passwords for 34 shutting down iServer and 137

stand-alone configurations and 9 updating license keys and 229 upgrades and 89, 133, 134 viewing licensing information and 224 configuration files 82, 157 configuration home locations 164 configuration parameters 13, 160, 202 See also parameters configuration templates 13, 160 configurations accessing security database and 47 binding CPU processes and 229, 232 creating dedicated user accounts and 25 deploying Information Console and 195, 201, 203 deploying iServer and 186 installing cluster nodes and 164, 175, 179, 180installing Information Console and 195, 202 installing iServer and 26, 29 licensing iServer and 222, 225 managing external volume databases and 7 master cluster nodes and 8 overwriting previous installations and 45 purging report files and 242 renaming licensing files and 229 testing installations and 48 upgrading and 82, 157 configuring application servers 195, 202 iServer 9 iServer System 6 LDAP servers 47 service privileges 26 system data store 150, 152 third-party databases 5, 9, 13, 14 upgrade utilities 157 connection parameters 19 See also parameters connection pooling 19, 53 connections accessing volume database and 18, 53 cluster configurations and 8 configuring Information Console 203 creating user accounts and 54, 57, 59, 61

installing cluster nodes and 175 running queries and 13 upgrading PostgreSQL databases and 86 context paths 197, 202 context-sensitive help 212 copying files 241 license files 229 corrupted schemas 79 CPU binding 226, 229–236 CPU binding validation 235, 236 CPU-based licenses combining named-user licenses with 222 determining number of 226, 229 exceeding number of 234, 236 viewing information about 235 CPUs binding to multiple core 232 deploying iServer over multithreaded 230 determining number of 232, 234 hyperthreading and 233 licensing options for 222, 229 measuring machine capacity for 222 restricting processes for 229 running encycsrvr11 processes and 234 running Information Console and 202 viewing maximum number of 235 viewing processor IDs for 230 CREATE\_SCHEMA parameter 145 creating administrator accounts 24,78 backup folders 244, 266, 287 cluster nodes 13, 160, 175 data cubes 223 database schema owners 53, 54, 56, 58, 61 database schemas 52, 53, 55, 59, 60, 61, 62, 135 e-mail accounts 236 Encyclopedia volume partitions 134 Encyclopedia volumes 27, 140, 156, 157 indexes 5 iServer images 184 passwords. See passwords production environments 48 production staging areas 48 report designs 223

system data schemas 150, 152 system databases 11, 53, 57 test environments 47 user accounts 24, 25 users 52, 53, 54, 57, 59, 61 credentials. *See* user credentials cube reports 223 cubes 223 cubeview files 223 custom configurations 29 custom installations 29, 64 Customer Support xi customizing Information Console 202, 203 third-party databases 5, 18

## D

dashboards vii, 223 data accessing 13 analyzing 223 backing up Encyclopedia and 240 preventing loss of 7, 26, 62 recovering 7 storing 185 summarizing 223 upgrades and 6, 79, 116 Data Analyzer Option 223 data cache 224 data cubes. See cubes Data Definition Language statements 53 data directory 29, 116 Data Exporter 137, 154 Data Exporter configurations 157 Data Exporter properties 142, 143 data files 190, 241 See also files; report files data objects 240 data objects files 5 data sources 11 Data Store Administrator See also System Data Store Administrator configuring 157 creating Encyclopedia and 156, 157 importing Encyclopedia and 139, 153, 154 migrating iServer installations and 6, 17

running 153 setting properties for 144 Data Store Upgrader 6, 17 Data Store Upgrader configurations 157 data stores 24, 150, 203 data types 18 DATA\_EXPORT\_FOLDER parameter 145 DATA\_EXPORT\_FORMAT parameter 145 DATA\_IMPORT\_FOLDER parameter 145 DATA\_IMPORT\_FORMAT parameter 145 database administration tool accessing PostgreSQL servers and 41, 98 backing up Encyclopedia and 244, 266, 287 installing 37 restoring Encyclopedia and 252, 274, 298 uninstalling 45 upgrades and 91, 108 Database Credentials option 31 database drivers. See drivers Database Schema Information page 69 database schema names 148 database schema owner 5, 31, 53, 54, 56, 58, 61 database schemas adding Encyclopedia to 156, 157 assigning privileges 53, 54, 56, 57, 58, 61 backing up 26, 150, 249 browsing 41 changing 98 creating 52, 53, 55, 59, 60, 61, 62, 135 depopulating 146 importing volume data in to 153, 154 preventing data loss and 7 removing Encyclopedia from 155 storing volume information and 4, 5 upgrades and 79,87 database servers. See servers database superuser 31 DATABASE\_HOST parameter 146 DATABASE\_NAME parameter 146 DATABASE\_PORT parameter 146 DATABASE\_TYPE parameter 144, 146 databases accessing Encyclopedia and 47 adding Encyclopedia and 157 adding indexes for 5

analyzing data and 223 backing up metadata for 7, 26, 62, 79, 241 backing up system 17 caching information objects and 224 changing 54, 57, 59, 61 changing volume metadata and 5 configuring third-party RDBMS 8, 9, 13, 14 connecting to 54, 57, 59, 61 creating system 11, 53, 57 creating system data store and 152 customizing 5, 18 importing Encyclopedia and 153, 154 installing alternate metadata 52, 53, 63 installing iServer and 24, 27, 29 managing Encyclopedia and 7 running iServer clusters and 14 selecting metadata 65 setting password for 31 storing cluster information and 184 storing user information and 4, 5 uninstalling 45,98 upgrades and 6, 78, 79, 86, 91 viewing incomplete files in 241 viewing installation information for 44 DB2 database administration tool backing up Encyclopedia and 287 restoring Encyclopedia and 298 DB2 databases 52 DDL statements 53 default directories. See directories default locales 33, 202 default ports. See ports default time zones 203 default user names 34 default values 45 default volume partitions 134 DEFAULT\_LOCALE parameter 202 DEFAULT\_TIMEZONE parameter 203 DEFAULT\_VOLUME parameter 203 DELETE\_ALL\_DATA parameter 146 DELETE\_DATA parameter 146 deleting Encyclopedia volumes 155 installation directories 45, 98 deploying Information Console 195, 201–204

iServer 6, 13, 160, 184, 186, 230 new releases 47 spreadsheets 223 WAR files 201 web applications 204 deployment scripts 185, 186 deployment tools 202 DEPOPULATE\_SCHEMA parameter 146 design files 5 designers vii, 47 designs 11, 48, 223, 225 desktop products 48 desktop shortcuts 41, 96, 113, 187 destination folder locations 29 developing applications 15 DHTML reports 224 diagnostic fixes 9, 14, 161 directories configuring cluster nodes and 13, 160 customizing WAR files and 203 deploying iServer images and 189, 190 extracting product files to 194 installing cluster nodes and 164 installing documentation files and xi installing iServer and 25, 29 installing iServer Integration Technology and 208 installing JDK files and 46 migrating Encyclopedia and 133 removing installation 45, 98 running multiple releases and 45 storing data and 185 upgrading iServer and 45, 82, 99, 116 directory paths 29, 116, 134 disk partitions 241 See also volume partitions disk space 46 displaying charts 46 cube reports 223 licensing information 224, 228 machine ID information 228 processor IDs 230 ReadMe files 201, 211 reports 223 DLLs 46, 189 document files 5, 225

document generation service 11 documentation accessing vii-xi administering iServer System and 16 deploying WAR files and 201 downloading xi installing online xi, 40, 212 managing Encyclopedia and 7 upgrades and 96, 112, 132 documentation conventions xii documentation update tool 212 domain servers 25 downloading documentation files x JAVA SE Development Kit 185 product files 27 Visual C++ libraries 185 drivers 11, 14, 18 DROP\_SCHEMA parameter 146 dual-core CPUs 232 dynamic link libraries 46, 189

## Ε

e.Analysis Option 224 e.Report Designer Professional 224 e.Report Option 224 e.reporting server. See iServer e.reports 185, 224 Eclipse BIRT open source projects vii elastic iServer clustering 13, 160, 184 e-mail. See notifications encoding 19 encyc directory 45, 82, 98, 133 Encyclopedia Data Store Administrator configuring 157 creating Encyclopedia and 156, 157 importing Encyclopedia and 139, 153, 154 migrating iServer installations and 6, 17 running 153 setting properties for 144 Encyclopedia Data Store Upgrader 6, 17 Encyclopedia Data Store Upgrader configurations 157 Encyclopedia Metadata Storage page 65, 85 Encyclopedia processes. See encycsrvr11 processes

Encyclopedia volume databases. See PostgreSQL databases; Oracle databases Encyclopedia volumes accessing multiple 224 accessing objects in 222 adding to database schemas 156, 157 assigning schema owner for 31 backing up 240-243, 244, 266, 287 backing up metadata for 26, 62 browsing schemas for 41 browsing system database for 98 connecting to database for 18 controlling access to 47 CPU binding and 235 creating 27 creating partitions for 134 creating schema owner for 54, 56, 58, 61 creating schemas for 55, 59, 60, 61, 62, 135 customizing system database for 5, 18 deploying iServer and 187 exporting 133, 154 failover operations for 7,8 importing 138, 153, 154 installing alternate database for 52, 53, 63 installing Information Console and 195 installing licenses and 33 installing system database for 4, 6, 31 iServer processes and 8 licensing and 222 localizing 19 managing 7 migrating data for 17 migrating to current release 78, 133 naming 140 preventing data loss for 7,26 removing from schemas 155 renaming 153 restoring 243, 252, 260, 266, 274, 286, 298 running iServer clusters and 14, 160 running system database for 4,9 setting location of 29 specifying default 203 specifying primary partition for 140 starting 9 storing user information for 4, 5, 11 troubleshooting 241 uninstalling databases for 45, 98

upgrading 49 upgrading iServer and 6, 17, 79 uploading sample files for 189 EncyclopediaUpgrader utility. See Encyclopedia Data Store Upgrader encycsrvr11 processes 230, 234, 235 environment variables 13, 46, 160, 230 environments 201 error logging reports 19 escape characters 157 evaluation copies 27 evaluation licenses 32, 120 example files 189 example reports 19 Excel formats vii Excel spreadsheets 223 executable files 46 Expiration time of deleted files property 242 expired licenses 227, 228 EXPORT\_ALL\_DATA parameter 146 EXPORT\_DATA parameter 147 exporting Encyclopedia volumes 133, 154 external data sources 11 external security systems 29 extracting product files 194

## F

Factory processes 46, 232, 235 Factory service 9, 11, 46 tailover operations 7,8 features xi, 46, 222 file folder 135 file I/O operations 11 tile names 226 file purging properties 242 file system backup utilities 241 file systems 5, 11 FILE\_LOG\_LEVEL parameter 143, 147 files accessing online help x, xi, 215 archiving 242 backing up 17, 82, 101, 241 configuring upgrade utilities and 157 copying 241 deploying iServer and 184, 186, 190 downloading documentation x

downloading product 27, 194 installing iServer and 26, 27 installing JDK software and 46 installing online help 212 managing 7 migrating Encyclopedia volumes and 135 obtaining license key 226, 228 obtaining temporary license 225 overwriting product 6, 45 purging 242 saving 82, 101 selecting license 32 specifying location of 29, 116 storing report-specific 5 transmitting license keys and 229 updating 212 upgrading iServer and 48, 79, 80 uploading sample 189 filetype folder 135 firewalls 175, 195 fixes 9, 14, 161 Flash gadgets vii folders archiving 187 backing up 250, 273, 297 creating 244, 266, 287 deploying iServer and 186 installing iServer and 29 installing Management Console and 171 migrating Encyclopedia and 135 restoring 253 shared configurations and 165, 176 specifying program 125 specifying resource 202 upgrades and 135 formats vii Forrester Wave Open Source Business Intelligence report vii ftp distributions cluster installations 162 documentation xi, 212 Information Console 194, 195 iServer 27 iServer Integration Technology 208 iServer System 194 iServer upgrades 82, 101, 114 full installations 194

## G

gadgets vii generating charts 46 machine ID information 228 reports 47 temporary documents 11 getJDBCMajorVersion method 18 graphs. *See* charts

#### Η

heap size 202 help 212 *See also* documentation help files x, xi, 212, 215 help topics xi hostnames Oracle databases 66 PostgreSQL databases 67 How 253 HTML documentation vii, x hyperthreading 233

## I

I/O operations 11 See also input; output icons (console applications) 125 ICU libraries 25 ICU\_DATA environment variable 25 IDAPI applications 10, 16 IMPORT\_DATA parameter 147 importing Encyclopedia volumes 138, 153, 154 incomplete files 241 indexed searches 5 Information Console assigning CPUs to 202 caching web pages for 204 cluster configurations and 14 connecting to 203 customizing 202, 203 deploying 195, 201–204 installing 194, 195, 201 logging activities for 203 logging in to 41, 205

preventing cache conflicts for 204 setting application server port for 195 setting context paths for 197, 202 setting default Encyclopedia for 203 stand-alone configurations and 9 starting 205 testing installations for 205 Information Delivery API 16 See also IDAPI applications information delivery solutions vii Information Object Caching Option 224 information object files 5 information objects 223, 224 INITIALIZE\_DATA parameter 147 in-place upgrades 78, 80, 82, 101 installation alternative volume databases and 52, 53, 63 C++ runtime components 187 cache conflicts and 204 cluster nodes 29, 162-174 Configuration Console 164, 194 desktop products 48 disk space and 46 domain servers and 25 Encyclopedia volume database 4, 5, 6 Information Console 194, 195, 201 iServer 6, 24, 27–41, 52, 64 iServer Integration Technology 194, 208– 211 iServer System 6, 194 iServer System components 29 Java Runtime Environment 195 Java Software Development Kit 46, 195 license keys 228 licensing prompts and 227, 228 Management Console 169, 194 online documentation xi, 40, 212 Open Security application 47 pgAdmin administration tool 37 previous releases and 45 testing 47, 205 upgrades and 45, 78, 80 installation directories 29, 45, 98 installation guides 16 installation options 29, 64 installation prerequisites 24, 52, 161, 194

installation wizard 195 Integration processes 232 Integration service 9, 11 IntegrationService element 232 Interactive Viewer 223 Interactive Viewer Option 223 international character sets 19 international customer licensing 227 iportal context path 197 iServer accessing functionality 222 accessing online help for 215 binding to multiple-core CPUs 232 binding to processors 230 changing CPU binding and 234 checking bound processors for 234–235 configuring 9 controlling access to 29 deploying 6, 13, 160, 184, 186, 230 downloading evaluation copies for 27 getting machine ID for 227 installing 6, 24, 27–41, 52, 64 installing as cluster node 162–174 optimizing performance for 14, 161 running 14, 25, 160 setting port number for 31 setting up user accounts for 24, 25, 26 setting up volume database and 5,9 shutting down 137, 189 starting 188 storing volume information and 4, 5 testing new releases for 47–49 upgrades and 6, 45 upgrading 78, 80, 99, 113 validating CPU binding and 235 viewing licensing information for 224, 228 iServer 11 service 34, 121 iServer directory 29 iServer distribution package 186 iServer images 184, 189 iServer Information page 199 iServer Integration Technology 16, 194, 208– 211 iServer processes binding to CPUs 226, 229-236 binding to Windows systems 229 domain servers and 25

multiple-core CPUs and 232 overwriting files and 80 running 8, 13, 160, 229 starting 230 upgrading and 80 verifying CPU binding for 232 iServer services *See also* specific service cluster configurations and 8 running 8 shutting down 80, 99 specifying user accounts for 24 iServer servlet container 8 iServer System administering 15 changing CPU binding and 236 cluster connecctions and 8 configuring 6 deploying new releases and 47 downloading files for 27, 194 installation options for 6, 29, 64 installation requirements for 194 licensing options for 222, 227 obtaining license keys for 228 obtaining licensing information for 225 optimizing 13, 160 running multiple releases and 45 upgrading 79 iServer System components 28, 29, 41 iServer System names 30

#### J

J2EE installations 201 JAR files 47 Java Factory service. *See* Factory service Java heap size 202 Java Object Interface 46 Java Runtime Environment (JRE) 195 JAVA SE Development Kit 185 Java Server Pages. *See* JSPs Java Software Development Kit (JDK) 46, 195 Java Virtual Machines. *See* JVM JDBC drivers 11, 18 jdbcCompliant method 18 jobs 10 JSPs 204 JVM libraries 46

## Κ

keys. See license keys

## L

language settings 33 launching iServer images 184 LDAP configuration file 47 LDAP security database 47 LDAP servers 29, 47 libraries 25, 46, 185, 189 License File Details page 32, 87 license files 32, 225 license key file locations 227 license key file names 226, 229 license key files 227 license key information 226 license key installations 228 license key updates 228 license keys 225, 226, 229, 230 licensed CPUs 235 See also CPU-based licenses licenses 87, 120, 222 licensing information 224, 225 licensing options 222, 227 links (documentation) xi Linux systems 16 load balancing (clusters) 14, 160 local help 215 Local Security Settings dialog 26 Local Users and Groups dialog 25 Locale Information page 33, 87 Localemap.xml 202 locales encoding character sets for 19 obtaining licenses for 227 selecting 33 setting default 33, 202 updating resource files for 212 upgrades and 87 localhost parameter 203 Localization and Online Documentation Update tool 212 log files 29, 116, 203 Log on as a service privilege message 32, 86 LOG\_FILE\_COUNT parameter 143, 147 LOG\_FILE\_LOCATION parameter 203 LOG\_FILE\_NAME parameter 147 LOG\_FILE\_SIZE parameter 143, 147 LOG\_FOLDER parameter 143, 144, 147 logging levels Data Store Administrator 147 Squirrel Data Exporter 143 logical CPUs 232 logical processors 230, 233 losing data 62

#### Μ

machine IDs 225, 227, 229 machine information 227 machine names 45 maintenance licenses 226 Management Console accessing documentation for 16 cluster configurations and 14 installing 169, 194 licensing and 222 managing Encyclopedia and 188 setting application container port for 170 setting user names for 34 stand-alone configurations and 9 starting 41 upgrades and 89 manual in-place upgrades 78, 80, 82 manual iServer system upgrades 6 manual side-by-side migrations 133 manual side-by-side upgrades 78, 113 manuals. See documentation Manuals directory xi mapping user information 47 master cluster nodes 8 master index file xi message routing (requests) 14 metadata autoarchiving and 242 backing up 26, 62, 241 changing 5 defined 240 preventing loss of 7, 26 storing 52, 150 storing volume information and 4, 11

upgrades and 6, 79, 85 metadata database 5, 52, 65, 241 See also PostgreSQL databases; Oracle databases Microsoft Excel spreadsheets 223 Microsoft SQL Server databases 52 Microsoft Windows systems. See Windows systems migration 6, 16, 45, 47, 49, 78 migration options 133 migration utilities 49 missing product files 194 missing system schemas 79 multicast configurations 8 multidimensional data analysis 223 multiple-core CPU binding 232 multiple Encyclopedia volumes 224 multiple product installations 45 multiple upgrade installations 46 Multi-Tenant Option 224 multi-threaded CPUs 230

#### Ν

Named User Platform 222 named-user licenses 33, 87, 222 naming conventions 53, 66 network administrators. See administrators network cards 227, 229 Network File Systems (NFS) 11 networked environments 13, 160, 194 New Schema page 135 New Server Registration dialog 42 NEW\_SCHEMA\_NAME parameter 142, 148 NEW\_SCHEMA\_PASSWWORD parameter 148 NEW\_VOLUME\_NAME parameter 143, 148 newinformationconsole.war 204 NobleNet Portmapper processes 80, 81, 101 node keys 225 node-key file locations 227 node-key licensing 225, 226, 227, 228 nodes. See cluster nodes notifications 235, 236

## 0

Object browser 42

obsolete command-line utilities 16 obsolete features 7 obsolete product information xii online documentation accessing vii-xi administering iServer System and 16 downloading xi installing xi, 40, 212 managing Encyclopedia and 7 upgrades and 96, 112, 132 Online Documentation and Localization resource files xi online documentation conventions xii online documentation update tool 212 online Encyclopedia volumes 9 online help 215 See also online documentation Open Security applications 29, 47, 82 open source projects vii opening Information Console 41, 205 Management Console 41 pgAdmin administration tool 42 operating systems 19, 229 optimizing iServer System 13, 160 options (installation) 29, 64 options (licensing) 222, 227 Oracle database application users 57, 61 Oracle database port 66 Oracle database schema owners 56, 61 Oracle database schemas 55 Oracle databases accessing documentation for 7 installing Encyclopedia and 63 installing iServer and 24, 52 storing user information and 5 upgrades and 78 ORACLE\_TNS\_NAMES\_FILE parameter 148 output 11 output formats vii overwriting product files 6, 45

#### Ρ

Page Level Security Option 224 page-level security 223, 224 parameters changing 187 configuring clusters and 13, 160 creating Encyclopedia volumes and 142, 143 deploying Information Console and 202 encoding volume data and 19 setting Data Store Administrator 144 partition names 134 partition paths 134 partitions (disk) 241 partitions (volume) 134, 140 Partitions page 134, 141 passwords changing 34 installing cluster nodes and 169 installing Information Console and 198 installing iServer and 27 setting database 31 starting console applications and 34 starting iServer service and 34 patches 9, 14, 161 paths 29, 116, 134 PDF documentation vii, x, xi, 212 performance cluster configurations and 14, 161 CPU binding and 232 file input/output operations and 11 iServer processes and 9 upgrades and 46 permanent licenses 227 permissions. See privileges pg\_dump command line options 249 pg\_dump utility 243, 245, 250 pg\_restore command-line options 260 pg\_restore utility 243, 257, 260 pgAdmin database administration tool accessing PostgreSQL servers and 41, 98 backing up Encyclopedia and 244 installing 37 restoring Encyclopedia and 252 uninstalling 45 upgrades and 91, 108 pgAdmin III Setup page 109 pgAdmin III Setup Wizard 111 platform licenses 222 POPULATE\_SCHEMA parameter 148

POPULATE\_SCHEMA\_PHASE\_ONE parameter 148 POPULATE\_SCHEMA\_PHASE\_TWO parameter 149 portinst.exe 185 portmapper components 185 ports application servers 195 cloud deployments and 185 cluster nodes 168 Information Console 203 iServer 31 multiple product releases and 45 Oracle databases 66 PostgreSQL databases 67 upgrades and 45 postgres database directory 45, 98 postgres system database 53, 57 PostgreSQL Database Connection Information 86 PostgreSQL Database Information page 31, 86 PostgreSQL database tools 243 PostgreSQL databases accessing documentation for 7 adding Encyclopedia and 157 backing up 17, 243 browsing schema definitions in 41 changing schemas for 98 cluster configurations and 13, 14 creating alternate 53, 57 creating schema owners for 54, 58 file I/O operations and 11 importing Encyclopedia and 153, 154 installing administration tool for 37 installing as alternate 52, 53, 57 installing iServer and 24, 27 setting password for 31 setting port number for 67 stand-alone configurations and 9 storing user information and 4, 5uninstalling 45,98 upgrades and 78, 86, 91 postgresql directory 251 PostgreSQL servers 5, 13, 41, 98 PostgreSQL superusers 31 Power Users accounts 24

prerequisites (installation) 24, 52, 161 previous releases 6, 45, 79, 99 printers 14, 24 privileges creating system schemas and 152 creating user accounts and 24 installing alternate databases and 53, 54, 57, 59, 61 installing Information Console and 194 logging in to iServer and 26 upgrades and 99 Process Management Daemon CPU binding and 230, 232 running cluster configurations and 13, 14, 160 running iServer processes and 8, 10 starting encycsrvr processes and 234, 235 Processor Affinity 232 processor IDs 230, 232 ProcessorAffinity element 232 processors. See CPUs product files 6, 26, 45, 82, 194, 212 product information xii product updates xi, 212 production environments 48 production staging areas 48 profiles (user) 34 program files. See product files program folders 125 properties files 157, 202 Properties page (New Server Registration) 43 publishing reports 223 Purge deleted files time property 242 purging report files 242

## Q

queries 11, 13, 54, 57, 59, 61 Query Option (licensing) 223

## R

RDBMS backup utilities 241 RDBMS databases 4, 5, 14, 64, 241 *See also* third-party databases RDBMS tools 7, 8, 17 ReadMe files 201, 211 rebinding encycsrvr11 processes 235 recovering data 7 refreshes 204 relational databases. See databases release notes xi remote procedure calls 10 remote servers 194 removing Encyclopedia volumes 155 installation directories 45, 98 renaming Encyclopedia volumes 153 license files 229 report design files 5 report designers vii, 47 report designs 11, 48, 223, 225 report document files 5, 225 report document generation service 11 report files archiving 242 backing up 17, 82, 101, 241 managing 7 purging 242 storing 5 upgrading iServer and 6, 48, 79, 80 uploading sample 189 report object executable files 46 Report Server Security Extension API 82 report templates 202 report viewers 223 reporting applications. See applications reporting server. See iServer reporting services. See specific iServer service ReportingService element 232 reports accessing sample 19 displaying 223 generating 47 publishing 223 running 185, 224 repositories 184 See also Encyclopedia volumes requests installing cluster nodes and 168 remote procedure calls and 10 running cluster configurations and 14, 160 resource file updates 212 resource folders 202

resource groups 46 resources accessing 202 creating cluster nodes and 13, 14, 160 deploying iServer and 186, 189 installing Information Console and 194 installing iServer and 24 obtaining licenses and 222 restoring Encyclopedia volumes 243, 252, 260, 266, 274, 286, 298 restricting iServer processes 229 rollbacks 79 RSSE code 82 running Data Store Administrator 139 encycsrvr11 processes 230, 234, 235 iServer 25 iServer processes 25, 226, 229 iServer services 8,24 jobs 10 multiple product releases 45 pg dump utility 245, 250 pg\_restore utility 257, 260 pgAdmin administration tool 41, 98 queries 11, 13, 54, 57, 59, 61 report designs 223 reports 185, 224 spreadsheet reports 223 Squirrel Data Exporter 137

## S

sample files 189 sample reports 19 saving previous releases 82, 101 scalability vii schema names 148 schema owner 5, 31, 53, 54, 56, 58, 61 SCHEMA\_FILE\_NAME parameter 144 SCHEMA\_NAME parameter 149 SCHEMA\_PASSWORD parameter 149 schemas adding Encyclopedia to 156, 157 assigning privileges 53, 54, 56, 57, 58, 61 backing up 26, 150, 249 browsing 41 changing 98

configuring system data store 150, 152 creating 52, 53, 55, 59, 60, 61, 62, 135 depopulating 146 importing volume data in to 153, 154 preventing data loss and 7 removing Encyclopedia from 155 storing volume information and 4, 5 upgrades and 79,87 SCRIPT\_HOME parameter 144 scripts 4, 53, 185 search results 224 searching online documentation xi security vii, 224 security database 47 security systems 29 server templates 13, 160, 187 SERVER\_DEFAULT parameter 203 servers *See also* iServer accessing PostgreSQL 41, 98 changing cluster machines and 229 configuring as cluster node 180 configuring as clusters 13, 14, 164 controlling Encyclopedia access and 47 deploying Information Console to 201, 202 exceeding CPU licenses for 235 installing iServer for external 29 integrating Actuate products with vii, 202 preventing cache conflicts for 204 running as clusters 180 running iServer processes and 25 setting port numbers for 195 shutting down iServer and 9 storing volume metadata and 5 service names 66 service privileges 26 services. See specific iServer service ServIntTech directory 208 servlet container 8 Setup Type page 29, 64 setup.exe 27,82 shared database schemas 156 shared licenses 225, 226 shared repository 184 sharing metadata databases 5 shortcuts 41, 96, 113, 187 shutting down. See stopping

side-by-side migrations (Encyclopedia) 133 side-by-side upgrades 78, 113 SIDs (system identifiers) 66 single-point node failure 13, 160 SmartSheet Security Option 223 snapshots 241 SOAP messages 10 SOAP processor 10 Specify Profiles page 34, 88, 105 Specify Windows Account Information page 198 spreadsheet reports 223 SQL queries 11, 13, 54, 57, 59, 61 SQL scripts 4, 53 SQL Server database administration tool backing up Encyclopedia and 266 restoring Encyclopedia and 274 SQL Server databases 52 Squirrel Data Exporter 6, 17, 137, 154 Squirrel Data Exporter configurations 157 Squirrel Data Exporter properties 142, 143 Squirrel database 4 SQUIRREL\_DATA\_HOME parameter 143 SQUIRREL\_EXPORT\_FOLDER parameter 142, 143 SQUIRREL\_EXPORT\_FORMAT parameter 143 stand-alone Encyclopedia database configurations 9 starting Data Store Administrator 139 Encyclopedia volumes 9 encycsrvr11 processes 234 Information Console 41, 205 iServer 188 iServer 11 service 34, 121 iServer processes 230 Management Console 41 pg\_dump utility 245, 250 pg\_restore utility 257, 260 pgAdmin administration tool 42 Squirrel Data Exporter 137 startiServer script 186 status folder (encyc) 135 stopping iServer 137, 189 iServer processes 80

iServer services 80,99 NobleNet Portmapper processes 81, 101 summarizing data 223 SUPERUSER parameter 149 superuser password 27, 31 SUPERUSER\_PASSWORD parameter 149 superusers 31 Supported Products Matrix xii, 201 Switch Help Location command 215 synchronous Factory service 11 syntax conventions (documentation) xii system administrator privileges 194 system administrators. See administrators System Configuration Password page 34, 89, 106 System Data Store Administrator 79, 150, 152 system databases 53, 57 See also PostgreSQL databases; Oracle databases system identifiers 66 system metadata 26, 62 system names 30, 85 system schema owner 54, 55, 56, 58, 61 system schema passwords 31 system schemas 55, 59, 61, 79 system variables 230 SYSTEM\_DATABASE\_NAME parameter 149 SystemDataStoreAdministrator class 152

### Т

table of contents (documentation) xi tables 5 TABLESPACE\_LOCATION parameter 149 TABLESPACE\_NAME parameter 149 Taking volume offline 253, 274 Taking volume onfline 286 Taking volume online 260, 313 TAR files 184 technical support xi TEMP\_FOLDER\_LOCATION parameter 203 templates 187, 202 temporary directories 203 temporary documents 11 temporary files 203 temporary license keys 228 temporary licenses 225, 227 testing desktop products 48 Information Console installations 205 new releases 47-49 text files 229 3rd-Party Database Information page 66 third-party database tools 243 third-party databases caching information objects and 224 creating indexes for 5 customizing 5, 18 installing 52, 53 installing iServer and 24 preventing data loss and 7, 26, 62 running iServer clusters and 8, 13, 14 selecting 65 storing cluster information and 184 uninstalling 98 upgrades and 79 third-party deployment tools 202 threads 202 time zones 33, 203 TIME\_ZONE parameter 150 TimeZones.xml 203 TNS services 66 Tomcat servers 195, 197 transient data stores 203 transient files 203 TRANSIENT\_STORE\_PATH parameter 203 Transparent Network Substrate services 66 transport protocol (requests) 10, 14, 160 troubleshooting 241 typographic conventions (documentation) xii

## U

UCS2 conversions 19 uninstalling pgAdmin administration tool 45 pgAdmin utility 98 system databases 98 third-party databases 45 UNIX systems 16 Update tool 212 updates (documentation) viii, xi updates (product) xi, 212 updating license key files 228 upgrade options 78, 80, 114 upgrade utilities 157 Upgrader utility 6, 17 Upgrader utility configurations 157 upgrades creating backups and 79 customizing volume database and 5 determining if needed 47 disk space and 46 Encyclopedia volumes 49, 133 installing product files and 79 iServer 78, 80, 99, 113 iServer processes and 80 licensing options and 226 migrating volume data and 17 overwriting previous releases and 6 pgAdmin administration tool 91, 108, 127 PostgreSQL database schemas and 98 previous releases and 45 rolling back 79 uploading sample files 189 URLs Actuate product information xii Actuate technical support xi Configuration Console 188 documentation updates xi evaluation copies 27 Information Console 203, 205 JAVA SE Development Kit 185 licensed products 226 Localization and Online Documentation Update tool 212 Management Console 188 Network File Systems 11 PDF documentation 212 release notes xi Supported Products Matrix 201 usage reports 19 USE\_SERVER\_CONFIG\_FILE parameter 150 user accounts cluster configurations and 25 connecting to databases and 54, 57, 59, 61 installing alternate databases and 53 installing Information Console and 198 iServer installations and 24, 25

managing 16 upgrades and 78, 88 user credentials 5 user information 4, 47 user names 34, 53 user profiles 34 User Rights Assignments dialog 26 user tracking reports 19 users 33, 52, 54, 57, 59, 61, 222

#### V

validating CPU binding 235 verifying CPU binding 232 View processes 232, 235 View service 9, 11, 46 viewers 223 viewing charts 46 cube reports 223 licensing information 224, 228 machine ID information 228 processor IDs 230 ReadMe files 201, 211 reports 223 ViewingService element 232 Vista operating systems 24 See also Windows systems Visual C++ libraries 185 volume administrators. See administrators volume data 240 volume databases. See PostgreSQL databases; Oracle databases volume metadata database 241 volume names 140, 153, 195 volume partition names 134 volume partition paths 134 volume partitions 134, 140 VOLUME\_NAME parameter 150 volumes. See Encyclopedia volumes

#### W

WAR files 195, 201, 202, 203 watermarks 225 web administrator privileges 194 web administrators. *See* administrators web applications 204 web archive files. See WAR files web browsers 204 web pages 204, 223, 224 web servers 202 See also servers Windows systems binding iServer processes to 229, 230-233 collecting machine information for 227 configuring firewalls for 175, 195 creating iServer images for 185 distributing iServer System over 6 installation prerequisites for 24, 52, 161, 194 installing cluster nodes for 162–174 installing Information Console for 194, 195, 201, 205 installing iServer for 27 installing iServer Integration Technology for 208 installing JDK files for 46, 195 installing JRE files for 195 installing localization and documentation files for 212 running iServer processes on 25, 80 setting classpaths for 47 setting default locale for 33 setting up user accounts for 24, 25, 26 starting iServer service for 34, 121 testing new releases for 47–49 upgrading Encyclopedia volumes for 137 upgrading iServer for 45, 78, 80, 99, 113 Work Unit Licenses 222

## Χ

XML files 229

#### Ζ

ZIP files 184